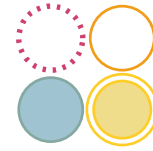


latexindent.pl

Version 3.14



Chris Hughes *

2022-01-08

latexindent.pl is a Perl script that indents .tex (and other) files according to an indentation scheme that the user can modify to suit their taste. Environments, including those with alignment delimiters (such as `tabular`), and commands, including those that can split braces and brackets across lines, are *usually* handled correctly by the script. Options for `verbatim`-like environments and commands, together with indentation after headings (such as `chapter`, `section`, etc) are also available. The script also has the ability to modify line breaks, and to add comment symbols and blank lines; furthermore, it permits string or regex-based substitutions. All user options are customisable via the switches and the YAML interface; you can find a quick start guide in Section 1.4 on page 5.



Contents

1	Introduction	4
1.1	Thanks	4
1.2	License	4
1.3	About this documentation	4
1.4	Quick start	5
1.5	A word about regular expressions	6
2	Demonstration: before and after	7
3	How to use the script	8
3.1	From the command line	8
3.2	From arara	14
3.3	Summary of exit codes	14
4	indentconfig.yaml, local settings and the -y switch	16
4.1	indentconfig.yaml and .indentconfig.yaml	16
4.2	localSettings.yaml and friends	17
4.3	The -y yaml switch	18
4.4	Settings load order	18

*and contributors! See Section 11.2 on page 135. For all communication, please visit [13].



5	defaultSettings.yaml	20
5.1	Backup and log file preferences	20
5.2	Verbatim code blocks	22
5.3	filecontents and preamble	25
5.4	Indentation and horizontal space	26
5.5	Aligning at delimiters	26
5.5.1	lookForAlignDelims: spacesBeforeAmpersand	31
5.5.2	lookForAlignDelims: alignFinalDoubleBackSlash	32
5.5.3	lookForAlignDelims: the dontMeasure feature	33
5.5.4	lookForAlignDelims: the delimiterRegEx and delimiterJustification feature	35
5.5.5	lookForAlignDelims: lookForChildCodeBlocks	37
5.6	Indent after items, specials and headings	38
5.7	The code blocks known latexindent.pl	44
5.8	noAdditionalIndent and indentRules	44
5.8.1	Environments and their arguments	46
5.8.2	Environments with items	52
5.8.3	Commands with arguments	53
5.8.4	ifelsefi code blocks	55
5.8.5	specialBeginEnd code blocks	57
5.8.6	afterHeading code blocks	58
5.8.7	The remaining code blocks	59
5.8.7.1	keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets	59
5.8.7.2	namedGroupingBracesBrackets	60
5.8.7.3	UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets	60
5.8.7.4	filecontents	61
5.8.8	Summary	61
5.9	Commands and the strings between their arguments	61
6	The -m (modifylinebreaks) switch	67
6.1	Text Wrapping	68
6.1.1	Text wrap quick start	69
6.1.2	textWrapOptions: modifying line breaks by text wrapping	69
6.1.3	Text wrapping on a per-code-block basis	72
6.2	removeParagraphLineBreaks: modifying line breaks for paragraphs	77
6.3	Combining removeParagraphLineBreaks and textWrapOptions	83
6.3.1	text wrapping beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks	84
6.4	Summary of text wrapping	86
6.5	oneSentencePerLine: modifying line breaks for sentences	87
6.5.1	sentencesFollow	89
6.5.2	sentencesBeginWith	89
6.5.3	sentencesEndWith	90
6.5.4	Features of the oneSentencePerLine routine	92
6.5.5	Text wrapping and indenting sentences	93
6.6	Poly-switches	95
6.6.1	Poly-switches for environments	95
6.6.1.1	Adding line breaks: BeginStartsOnOwnLine and BodyStartsOnOwnLine	96
6.6.1.2	Adding line breaks using EndStartsOnOwnLine and EndFinishesWithLineBreak	98
6.6.1.3	poly-switches 1, 2, and 3 only add line breaks when necessary	99
6.6.1.4	Removing line breaks (poly-switches set to -1)	100
6.6.1.5	About trailing horizontal space	101
6.6.1.6	poly-switch line break removal and blank lines	102
6.6.2	Poly-switches for double back slash	103
6.6.2.1	Double back slash starts on own line	103
6.6.2.2	Double back slash finishes with line break	104
6.6.2.3	Double back slash poly-switches for specialBeginEnd	104
6.6.2.4	Double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments	105



6.6.2.5	Double back slash optional square brackets	106
6.6.3	Poly-switches for other code blocks	106
6.6.4	Partnering BodyStartsOnOwnLine with argument-based poly-switches	108
6.6.5	Conflicting poly-switches: sequential code blocks	109
6.6.6	Conflicting poly-switches: nested code blocks	110
7	The -r, -rv and -rr switches	112
7.1	Introduction to replacements	112
7.2	The two types of replacements	113
7.3	Examples of replacements	113
8	The -lines switch	121
9	Fine tuning	127
10	Conclusions and known limitations	134
11	References	135
11.1	External links	135
11.2	Contributors	135
A	Required Perl modules	137
A.1	Module installer script	137
A.2	Manually installing modules	137
A.2.1	Linux	138
A.2.1.1	perlbrew	138
A.2.1.2	Ubuntu/Debian	138
A.2.1.3	Ubuntu: using the texlive from apt-get	138
A.2.1.4	Alpine	138
A.2.2	Mac	139
A.2.3	Windows	139
B	Updating the path variable	140
B.1	Add to path for Linux	140
B.2	Add to path for Windows	140
C	latexindent-yaml-schema.json	142
C.1	VSCoDe demonstration	142
D	Using conda	143
E	logFilePreferences	144
F	Encoding indentconfig.yaml	145
G	dos2unix linebreak adjustment	146
H	Differences from Version 2.2 to 3.0	147
	List of listings	149
	Index	156

SECTION 1



Introduction

1.1 Thanks

I first created `latexindent.pl` to help me format chapter files in a big project. After I blogged about it on the \TeX stack exchange [1] I received some positive feedback and follow-up feature requests. A big thank you to Harish Kumar [19] who helped to develop and test the initial versions of the script.

The YAML-based interface of `latexindent.pl` was inspired by the wonderful `arara` tool; any similarities are deliberate, and I hope that it is perceived as the compliment that it is. Thank you to Paulo Cereda and the team for releasing this awesome tool; I initially worried that I was going to have to make a GUI for `latexindent.pl`, but the release of `arara` has meant there is no need.

There have been several contributors to the project so far (and hopefully more in the future!); thank you very much to the people detailed in Section 11.2 on page 135 for their valued contributions, and thank you to those who report bugs and request features at [13].

1.2 License

`latexindent.pl` is free and open source, and it always will be; it is released under the GNU General Public License v3.0.

Before you start using it on any important files, bear in mind that `latexindent.pl` has the option to overwrite your `.tex` files. It will always make at least one backup (you can choose how many it makes, see page 21) but you should still be careful when using it. The script has been tested on many files, but there are some known limitations (see Section 10). You, the user, are responsible for ensuring that you maintain backups of your files before running `latexindent.pl` on them. I think it is important at this stage to restate an important part of the license here:

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

There is certainly no malicious intent in releasing this script, and I do hope that it works as you expect it to; if it does not, please first of all make sure that you have the correct settings, and then feel free to let me know at [13] with a complete minimum working example as I would like to improve the code as much as possible.



Warning!

Before you try the script on anything important (like your thesis), test it out on the sample files in the `test-case` directory [13].

If you have used any version 2. of `latexindent.pl`, there are a few changes to the interface; see appendix H on page 147 and the comments throughout this document for details.*

1.3 About this documentation

As you read through this documentation, you will see many listings; in this version of the documentation, there are a total of 560. This may seem a lot, but I deem it necessary in presenting the various different options of `latexindent.pl` and the associated output that they are capable of producing.

The different listings are presented using different styles:

LISTING 1: `demo-tex.tex`

`demonstration .tex file`

This type of listing is a `.tex` file.



LISTING 2: fileExtensionPreference

```
44 fileExtensionPreference:
45   .tex: 1
46   .sty: 2
47   .cls: 3
48   .bib: 4
```

This type of listing is a .yaml file; when you see line numbers given (as here) it means that the snippet is taken directly from `defaultSettings.yaml`, discussed in detail in Section 5 on page 20.

LISTING 3: modifyLineBreaks

```
487 modifyLineBreaks:
488   preserveBlankLines: 1
489   condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto: 1
```

This type of listing is a .yaml file, but it will only be relevant when the `-m` switch is active; see Section 6 on page 67 for more details.

LISTING 4: replacements

```
619 replacements:
620   -
621     amalgamate: 1
622   -
623     this: 'latexindent.pl'
624     that: 'pl.latexindent'
625     lookForThis: 0
626     when: before
```

This type of listing is a .yaml file, but it will only be relevant when the `-r` switch is active; see Section 7 on page 112 for more details.

N: 2017-06-25

You will occasionally see dates shown in the margin (for example, next to this paragraph!) which detail the date of the version in which the feature was implemented; the 'N' stands for 'new as of the date shown' and 'U' stands for 'updated as of the date shown'. If you see ✨, it means that the feature is either new (N) or updated (U) as of the release of the current version; if you see ✨ attached to a listing, then it means that listing is new (N) or updated (U) as of the current version. If you have not read this document before (and even if you have!), then you can ignore every occurrence of the ✨; they are simply there to highlight new and updated features. The new and updated features in this documentation (V3.14) are on the following pages:

vversion switch (N) 8

1.4 Quick start

If you'd like to get started with `latexindent.pl` then simply type

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
```

from the command line. If you receive an error message such as that given in Listing 5, then you need to install the missing perl modules.

LISTING 5: Possible error messages

```
Can't locate File/HomeDir.pm in @INC (@INC contains:
/Library/Perl/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level/Library/Perl/5.12
/Network/Library/Perl/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level
/Network/Library/Perl/5.12
/Library/Perl/Updates/5.12.4/darwin-thread-multi-2level
/Library/Perl/Updates/5.12.4
/System/Library/Perl/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level/System/Library/Perl/5.12
/System/Library/Perl/Extras/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level
/System/Library/Perl/Extras/5.12.) at helloworld.pl line 10.
BEGIN failed--compilation aborted at helloworld.pl line 10.
```

`latexindent.pl` ships with a script to help with this process; if you run the following script, you should be prompted to install the appropriate modules.



```
cmh:~$ perl latexindent-module-installer.pl
```

You might also like to see <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/19590042/error-cant-locate-file-homedir-pm-in-inc>, for example, as well as appendix A on page 137.

1.5 A word about regular expressions

As you read this documentation, you may encounter the term *regular expressions*. I've tried to write this documentation in such a way so as to allow you to engage with them or not, as you prefer. This documentation is not designed to be a guide to regular expressions, and if you'd like to read about them, I recommend [12].

SECTION 2



Demonstration: before and after

Let's give a demonstration of some before and after code – after all, you probably won't want to try the script if you don't much like the results. You might also like to watch the video demonstration I made on youtube [31]

As you look at Listings 6 to 11, remember that `latexindent.pl` is just following its rules, and there is nothing particular about these code snippets. All of the rules can be modified so that you can personalise your indentation scheme.

In each of the samples given in Listings 6 to 11 the 'before' case is a 'worst case scenario' with no effort to make indentation. The 'after' result would be the same, regardless of the leading white space at the beginning of each line which is stripped by `latexindent.pl` (unless a `verbatim`-like environment or `noIndentBlock` is specified – more on this in Section 5).

LISTING 6: filecontents1.tex

```
\begin{filecontents}{mybib.bib}
@online{strawberryperl,
title="Strawberry Perl",
url="http://strawberryperl.com/"}
@online{cmhblog,
title="A Perl script ..."
url="..."
}
\end{filecontents}
```

LISTING 8: tikzset.tex

```
\tikzset{
shrink inner sep/.code={
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
}
}
```

LISTING 10: pstricks.tex

```
\def\Picture#1{%
\def\stripH{#1}%
\begin{pspicture}[showgrid]
\psforeach{\row}{%
{{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
...
}}{%
\expandafter...
}
\end{pspicture}}
```

LISTING 7: filecontents1.tex default output

```
\begin{filecontents}{mybib.bib}
@online{strawberryperl,
title="Strawberry Perl",
url="http://strawberryperl.com/"}
@online{cmhblog,
title="A Perl script ..."
url="..."
}
\end{filecontents}
```

LISTING 9: tikzset.tex default output

```
\tikzset{
shrink inner sep/.code={
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
}
}
```

LISTING 11: pstricks.tex default output

```
\def\Picture#1{%
\def\stripH{#1}%
\begin{pspicture}[showgrid]
\psforeach{\row}{%
{{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
...
}}{%
\expandafter...
}
\end{pspicture}}
```

SECTION 3



How to use the script

`latexindent.pl` ships as part of the T_EXLive distribution for Linux and Mac users; `latexindent.exe` ships as part of the T_EXLive for Windows users. These files are also available from github [13] should you wish to use them without a T_EX distribution; in this case, you may like to read appendix B on page 140 which details how the path variable can be updated.

In what follows, we will always refer to `latexindent.pl`, but depending on your operating system and preference, you might substitute `latexindent.exe` or simply `latexindent`.

There are two ways to use `latexindent.pl`: from the command line, and using `arara`; we discuss these in Section 3.1 and Section 3.2 respectively. We will discuss how to change the settings and behaviour of the script in Section 5 on page 20.

`latexindent.pl` ships with `latexindent.exe` for Windows users, so that you can use the script with or without a Perl distribution. If you plan to use `latexindent.pl` (i.e, the original Perl script) then you will need a few standard Perl modules – see appendix A on page 137 for details; in particular, note that a module installer helper script is shipped with `latexindent.pl`.

MiKTeX users on Windows may like to see [15] for details of how to use `latexindent.exe` without a Perl installation.

3.1 From the command line

`latexindent.pl` has a number of different switches/flags/options, which can be combined in any way that you like, either in short or long form as detailed below. `latexindent.pl` produces a `.log` file, `indent.log`, every time it is run; the name of the log file can be customised, but we will refer to the log file as `indent.log` throughout this document. There is a base of information that is written to `indent.log`, but other additional information will be written depending on which of the following options are used.

-v, -version

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -v
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --version
```

This will output only the version number to the terminal.

-vv, -vversion

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -vv
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --vversion
```

This will output *verbose* version details to the terminal, including the location of `latexindent.pl` and `defaultSettings.yaml`.

-h, -help

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -h
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --help
```

As above this will output a welcome message to the terminal, including the version number and available options.



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
```

This will operate on `myfile.tex`, but will simply output to your terminal; `myfile.tex` will not be changed by `latexindent.pl` in any way using this command.

`-w, -overwrite`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -w myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --overwrite myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex --overwrite
```

This *will* overwrite `myfile.tex`, but it will make a copy of `myfile.tex` first. You can control the name of the extension (default is `.bak`), and how many different backups are made – more on this in Section 5, and in particular see `backupExtension` and `onlyOneBackUp`.

Note that if `latexindent.pl` can not create the backup, then it will exit without touching your original file; an error message will be given asking you to check the permissions of the backup file.

`-o=output.tex, -outputfile=output.tex`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o=output.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --outputfile=output.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --outputfile output.tex myfile.tex
```

This will indent `myfile.tex` and output it to `output.tex`, overwriting it (`output.tex`) if it already exists¹. Note that if `latexindent.pl` is called with both the `-w` and `-o` switches, then `-w` will be ignored and `-o` will take priority (this seems safer than the other way round).

Note that using `-o` as above is equivalent to using

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex > output.tex
```

N: 2017-06-25

You can call the `-o` switch with the name of the output file *without* an extension; in this case, `latexindent.pl` will use the extension from the original file. For example, the following two calls to `latexindent.pl` are equivalent:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output.tex
```

N: 2017-06-25

You can call the `-o` switch using a `+` symbol at the beginning; this will concatenate the name of the input file and the text given to the `-o` switch. For example, the following two calls to `latexindent.pl` are equivalent:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o+=new
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=myfilenew.tex
```

N: 2017-06-25

You can call the `-o` switch using a `++` symbol at the end of the name of your output file; this tells `latexindent.pl` to search successively for the name of your output file concatenated with `0`, `1`, ... while the name of the output file exists. For example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output++
```

¹Users of version 2.* should note the subtle change in syntax



tells `latexindent.pl` to output to `output0.tex`, but if it exists then output to `output1.tex`, and so on.

Calling `latexindent.pl` with simply

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=++
```

tells it to output to `myfile0.tex`, but if it exists then output to `myfile1.tex` and so on.

The `+` and `++` feature of the `-o` switch can be combined; for example, calling

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=+out++
```

tells `latexindent.pl` to output to `myfileout0.tex`, but if it exists, then try `myfileout1.tex`, and so on.

There is no need to specify a file extension when using the `++` feature, but if you wish to, then you should include it *after* the `++` symbols, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=+out++.tex
```

See appendix H on page 147 for details of how the interface has changed from Version 2.2 to Version 3.0 for this flag.

`-s, -silent`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -s
```

Silent mode: no output will be given to the terminal.

`-t, -trace`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -t myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -t
```

Tracing mode: verbose output will be given to `indent.log`. This is useful if `latexindent.pl` has made a mistake and you're trying to find out where and why. You might also be interested in learning about `latexindent.pl`'s thought process – if so, this switch is for you, although it should be noted that, especially for large files, this does affect performance of the script.

`-tt, -ttrace`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -tt myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -tt
```

More detailed tracing mode: this option gives more details to `indent.log` than the standard trace option (note that, even more so than with `-t`, especially for large files, performance of the script will be affected).

`-l, -local[=myyaml.yaml,other.yaml,...]`



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l first.yaml,second.yaml,third.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=first.yaml,second.yaml,third.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -l=first.yaml,second.yaml,third.yaml
```

latexindent.pl will always load defaultSettings.yaml (rhymes with camel) and if it is called with the -l switch and it finds localSettings.yaml in the same directory as myfile.tex, then, if not found, it looks for localSettings.yaml (and friends, see Section 4.2 on page 17) in the current working directory, then these settings will be added to the indentation scheme. Information will be given in indent.log on the success or failure of loading localSettings.yaml.

U: 2021-03-14

The -l flag can take an *optional* parameter which details the name (or names separated by commas) of a YAML file(s) that resides in the same directory as myfile.tex; you can use this option if you would like to load a settings file in the current working directory that is *not* called localSettings.yaml. In fact, you can specify both *relative* and *absolute paths* for your YAML files; for example

U: 2017-08-21

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=../myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=/home/cmhughes/Desktop/myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=C:\Users\cmhughes\Desktop\myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
```

You will find a lot of other explicit demonstrations of how to use the -l switch throughout this documentation,

N: 2017-06-25

You can call the -l switch with a '+' symbol either before or after another YAML file; for example:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l+=myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l "+_myyaml.yaml" myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myyaml.yaml+ myfile.tex
```

which translate, respectively, to

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=localSettings.yaml,myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=localSettings.yaml,myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myyaml.yaml,localSettings.yaml myfile.tex
```

Note that the following is *not* allowed:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l+myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
```

and

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l + myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
```

will *only* load localSettings.yaml, and myyaml.yaml will be ignored. If you wish to use spaces between any of the YAML settings, then you must wrap the entire list of YAML files in quotes, as demonstrated above.

N: 2017-06-25

You may also choose to omit the yaml extension, such as

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=localSettings,myyaml myfile.tex
```

-y, -yaml=yaml settings



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -y="defaultIndent:␣'␣'"
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -y="defaultIndent:␣'␣',maximumIndentation:'␣'"
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -y="indentRules:␣one:␣'\t\t\t\t'"
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
-y='modifyLineBreaks:environments:EndStartsOnOwnLine:3' -m
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
-y='modifyLineBreaks:environments:one:EndStartsOnOwnLine:3' -m
```

N: 2017-08-21

You can specify YAML settings from the command line using the `-y` or `-yaml` switch; sample demonstrations are given above. Note, in particular, that multiple settings can be specified by separating them via commas. There is a further option to use a `;` to separate fields, which is demonstrated in Section 4.3 on page 18.

Any settings specified via this switch will be loaded *after* any specified using the `-l` switch. This is discussed further in Section 4.4 on page 18.

`-d, -onlydefault`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -d myfile.tex
```

Only defaultSettings.yaml: you might like to read Section 5 before using this switch. By default, latexindent.pl will always search for indentconfig.yaml or .indentconfig.yaml in your home directory. If you would prefer it not to do so then (instead of deleting or renaming indentconfig.yaml or .indentconfig.yaml) you can simply call the script with the `-d` switch; note that this will also tell the script to ignore localSettings.yaml even if it has been called with the `-l` switch; latexindent.pl will also ignore any settings specified from the `-y` switch.

U: 2017-08-21

`-c, -cruft=<directory>`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -c=/path/to/directory/ myfile.tex
```

If you wish to have backup files and indent.log written to a directory other than the current working directory, then you can send these ‘cruft’ files to another directory. Note the use of a trailing forward slash.

`-g, -logfile=<name of log file>`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -g=other.log myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -g other.log myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --logfile other.log myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -g other.log
```

By default, latexindent.pl reports information to indent.log, but if you wish to change the name of this file, simply call the script with your chosen name after the `-g` switch as demonstrated above.

If latexindent.pl can not open the log file that you specify, then the script will operate, and no log file will be produced; this might be helpful to users who wish to specify the following, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -g /dev/null myfile.tex
```

`-sl, -screenlog`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -sl myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -screenlog myfile.tex
```

Using this option tells latexindent.pl to output the log file to the screen, as well as to your chosen log file.

N: 2018-01-13



-m, -modifylinebreaks

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -modifylinebreaks myfile.tex
```

One of the most exciting developments in Version 3.0 is the ability to modify line breaks; for full details see Section 6 on page 67

latexindent.pl can also be called on a file without the file extension, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile
```

and in which case, you can specify the order in which extensions are searched for; see Listing 16 on page 20 for full details.

STDIN

```
cmh:~$ cat myfile.tex | latexindent.pl
cmh:~$ cat myfile.tex | latexindent.pl -
```

N: 2018-01-13

latexindent.pl will allow input from STDIN, which means that you can pipe output from other commands directly into the script. For example assuming that you have content in myfile.tex, then the above command will output the results of operating upon myfile.tex.

If you wish to use this feature with your own local settings, via the -l switch, then you should finish your call to latexindent.pl with a - sign:

```
cmh:~$ cat myfile.tex | latexindent.pl -l=mysettings.yaml -
```

U: 2018-01-13

Similarly, if you simply type latexindent.pl at the command line, then it will expect (STDIN) input from the command line.

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl
```

Once you have finished typing your input, you can press

- CTRL+D on Linux
- CTRL+Z followed by ENTER on Windows

to signify that your input has finished. Thanks to [5] for an update to this feature.

-r, -replacement

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -replacement myfile.tex
```

N: 2019-07-13

You can call latexindent.pl with the -r switch to instruct it to perform replacements/substitutions on your file; full details and examples are given in Section 7 on page 112.

-rv, -replacementrespectverb

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rv myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -replacementrespectverb myfile.tex
```

N: 2019-07-13

You can instruct latexindent.pl to perform replacements/substitutions by using the -rv switch, but will *respect verbatim code blocks*; full details and examples are given in Section 7 on page 112.



`-rr, -onlyreplacement`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rr myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -onlyreplacement myfile.tex
```

N: 2019-07-13

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to skip all of its other indentation operations and *only* perform replacements/substitutions by using the `-rr` switch; full details and examples are given in Section 7 on page 112.

`-k, -check`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -k myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -check myfile.tex
```

N: 2021-09-16

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to check if the text after indentation matches that given in the original file.

The exit code of `latexindent.pl` is 0 by default. If you use the `-k` switch then

- if the text after indentation matches that given in the original file, then the exit code is 0;
- if the text after indentation does *not* match that given in the original file, then the exit code is 1.

The value of the exit code may be important to those wishing to, for example, check the status of the indentation in continuous integration tools such as GitHub Actions. Full details of the exit codes of `latexindent.pl` are given in Table 1.

A simple diff will be given in `indent.log`.

`-kv, -checkv`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -kv myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -checkv myfile.tex
```

N: 2021-09-16

The `check verbose` switch is exactly the same as the `-k` switch, except that it is *verbose*, and it will output the (simple) diff to the terminal, as well as to `indent.log`.

`-n, -lines=MIN-MAX`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -n 5-8 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -lines 5-8 myfile.tex
```

N: 2021-09-16

The `lines` switch instructs `latexindent.pl` to operate only on specific line ranges within `myfile.tex`. Complete demonstrations are given in Section 8.

3.2 From arara

Using `latexindent.pl` from the command line is fine for some folks, but others may find it easier to use from `arara`; you can find the `arara` rule for `latexindent.pl` and its associated documentation at [4].

3.3 Summary of exit codes

Assuming that you call `latexindent.pl` on `myfile.tex`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
```

then `latexindent.pl` can exit with the exit codes given in Table 1.

TABLE 1: Exit codes for `latexindent.pl`

exit code	indentation	status
0	✓	success; if <code>-k</code> or <code>-kv</code> active, indented text matches original
0	✗	success; if <code>-version</code> , <code>-vversion</code> or <code>-help</code> , no indentation performed
1	✓	success, and <code>-k</code> or <code>-kv</code> active; indented text <i>different</i> from original
2	✗	failure, <code>defaultSettings.yaml</code> could not be read
3	✗	failure, <code>myfile.tex</code> not found
4	✗	failure, <code>myfile.tex</code> exists but cannot be read
5	✗	failure, <code>-w</code> active, and back-up file cannot be written
6	✗	failure, <code>-c</code> active, and <code>cruft</code> directory does not exist

SECTION 4



indentconfig.yaml, local settings and the -y switch

The behaviour of `latexindent.pl` is controlled from the settings specified in any of the YAML files that you tell it to load. By default, `latexindent.pl` will only load `defaultSettings.yaml`, but there are a few ways that you can tell it to load your own settings files.

4.1 indentconfig.yaml and .indentconfig.yaml

`latexindent.pl` will always check your home directory for `indentconfig.yaml` and `.indentconfig.yaml` (unless it is called with the `-d` switch), which is a plain text file you can create that contains the *absolute* paths for any settings files that you wish `latexindent.pl` to load. There is no difference between `indentconfig.yaml` and `.indentconfig.yaml`, other than the fact that `.indentconfig.yaml` is a ‘hidden’ file; thank you to [11] for providing this feature. In what follows, we will use `indentconfig.yaml`, but it is understood that this could equally represent `.indentconfig.yaml`. If you have both files in existence then `indentconfig.yaml` takes priority.

For Mac and Linux users, their home directory is `/username` while Windows (Vista onwards) is `C:\Users\username`² Listing 12 shows a sample `indentconfig.yaml` file.

LISTING 12: `indentconfig.yaml` (sample)

```
# Paths to user settings for latexindent.pl
#
# Note that the settings will be read in the order you
# specify here- each successive settings file will overwrite
# the variables that you specify

paths:
- /home/cmhughes/Documents/yamlfiles/mysettings.yaml
- /home/cmhughes/folder/othersettings.yaml
- /some/other/folder/anynameyouwant.yaml
- C:\Users\chughes\Documents\mysettings.yaml
- C:\Users\chughes\Desktop\test spaces\more spaces.yaml
```

Note that the `.yaml` files you specify in `indentconfig.yaml` will be loaded in the order in which you write them. Each file doesn’t have to have every switch from `defaultSettings.yaml`; in fact, I recommend that you only keep the switches that you want to *change* in these settings files.

To get started with your own settings file, you might like to save a copy of `defaultSettings.yaml` in another directory and call it, for example, `mysettings.yaml`. Once you have added the path to `indentconfig.yaml` you can change the switches and add more code-block names to it as you see fit – have a look at Listing 13 for an example that uses four tabs for the default indent, adds the `tabbing` environment/command to the list of environments that contains alignment delimiters; you might also like to refer to the many YAML files detailed throughout the rest of this documentation.

²If you’re not sure where to put `indentconfig.yaml`, don’t worry `latexindent.pl` will tell you in the log file exactly where to put it assuming it doesn’t exist already.



LISTING 13: mysettings.yaml (example)

```
# Default value of indentation
defaultIndent: "\t\t\t\t\t"

# environments that have tab delimiters, add more
# as needed
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing: 1
```

You can make sure that your settings are loaded by checking `indent.log` for details – if you have specified a path that `latexindent.pl` doesn't recognise then you'll get a warning, otherwise you'll get confirmation that `latexindent.pl` has read your settings file ³.

**Warning!**

When editing `.yaml` files it is *extremely* important to remember how sensitive they are to spaces. I highly recommend copying and pasting from `defaultSettings.yaml` when you create your first `whateveryoulike.yaml` file.

If `latexindent.pl` can not read your `.yaml` file it will tell you so in `indent.log`.

N: 2021-06-19

If you find that `latexindent.pl` does not read your YAML file, then it might be as a result of the default commandline encoding not being UTF-8; normally this will only occur for Windows users. In this case, you might like to explore the encoding option for `indentconfig.yaml` as demonstrated in Listing 14.

LISTING 14: The encoding option for indentconfig.yaml

```
encoding: GB2312
paths:
- D:\cmh\latexindent.yaml
```

Thank you to [26] for this contribution; please see appendix F on page 145 and details within [25] for further information.

4.2 localSettings.yaml and friends

U: 2021-03-14

The `-l` switch tells `latexindent.pl` to look for `localSettings.yaml` and/or friends in the *same directory* as `myfile.tex`. For example, if you use the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l myfile.tex
```

then `latexindent.pl` will search for and then, assuming they exist, load each of the following files in the following order:

1. `localSettings.yaml`
2. `latexindent.yaml`
3. `.localSettings.yaml`
4. `.latexindent.yaml`

These files will be assumed to be in the same directory as `myfile.tex`, or otherwise in the current working directory. You do not need to have all of the above files, usually just one will be sufficient. In what follows, whenever we refer to `localSettings.yaml` it is assumed that it can mean any of the four named options listed above.

If you'd prefer to name your `localSettings.yaml` file something different, (say, `mysettings.yaml` as in Listing 13) then you can call `latexindent.pl` using, for example,

³Windows users may find that they have to end `.yaml` files with a blank line



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=mysettings.yaml myfile.tex
```

Any settings file(s) specified using the `-l` switch will be read *after* `defaultSettings.yaml` and, assuming they exist, any user setting files specified in `indentconfig.yaml`.

Your settings file can contain any switches that you'd like to change; a sample is shown in Listing 15, and you'll find plenty of further examples throughout this manual.

LISTING 15: `localSettings.yaml` (example)

```
# verbatim environments - environments specified
# here will not be changed at all!
verbatimEnvironments:
  cmhenvironment: 0
  myenv: 1
```

You can make sure that your settings file has been loaded by checking `indent.log` for details; if it can not be read then you receive a warning, otherwise you'll get confirmation that `latexindent.pl` has read your settings file.

4.3 The -y|yaml switch

N: 2017-08-21

You may use the `-y` switch to load your settings; for example, if you wished to specify the settings from Listing 15 using the `-y` switch, then you could use the following command:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -y="verbatimEnvironments:cmhenvironment:0;myenv:1" myfile.tex
```

Note the use of `;` to specify another field within `verbatimEnvironments`. This is shorthand, and equivalent, to using the following command:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl
-y="verbatimEnvironments:cmhenvironment:0,verbatimEnvironments:myenv:1"
myfile.tex
```

You may, of course, specify settings using the `-y` switch as well as, for example, settings loaded using the `-l` switch; for example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=mysettings.yaml
-y="verbatimEnvironments:cmhenvironment:0;myenv:1" myfile.tex
```

Any settings specified using the `-y` switch will be loaded *after* any specified using `indentconfig.yaml` and the `-l` switch.

If you wish to specify any regex-based settings using the `-y` switch, it is important not to use quotes surrounding the regex; for example, with reference to the 'one sentence per line' feature (Section 6.5 on page 87) and the listings within Listing 345 on page 88, the following settings give the option to have sentences end with a semicolon

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m
--yaml='modifyLineBreaks:oneSentencePerLine:sentencesEndWith:other:;'
```

4.4 Settings load order

`latexindent.pl` loads the settings files in the following order:

1. `defaultSettings.yaml` is always loaded, and can not be renamed;
2. `anyUserSettings.yaml` and any other arbitrarily-named files specified in `indentconfig.yaml`;



3. `localSettings.yaml` but only if found in the same directory as `myfile.tex` and called with `-l` switch; this file can be renamed, provided that the call to `latexindent.pl` is adjusted accordingly (see Section 4.2). You may specify both relative and absolute paths to other YAML files using the `-l` switch, separating multiple files using commas;

U: 2017-08-21

N: 2017-08-21

4. any settings specified in the `-y` switch.

A visual representation of this is given in Figure 1.

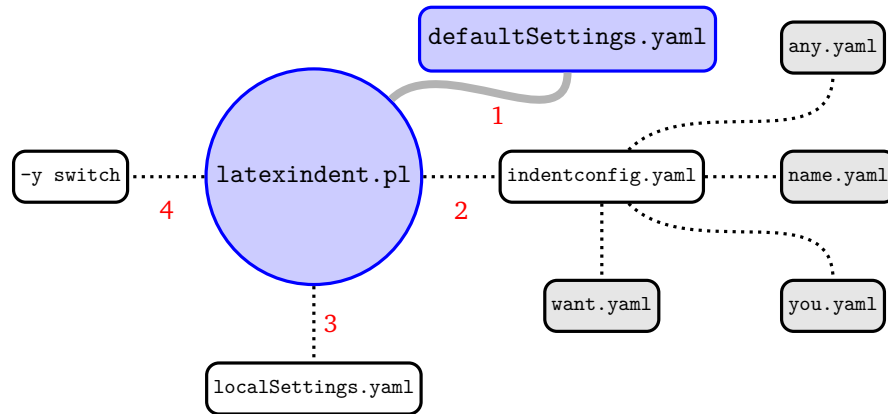


FIGURE 1: Schematic of the load order described in Section 4.4; solid lines represent mandatory files, dotted lines represent optional files. `indentconfig.yaml` can contain as many files as you like. The files will be loaded in order; if you specify settings for the same field in more than one file, the most recent takes priority.

SECTION 5



defaultSettings.yaml

`latexindent.pl` loads its settings from `defaultSettings.yaml`. The idea is to separate the behaviour of the script from the internal working – this is very similar to the way that we separate content from form when writing our documents in \LaTeX .

If you look in `defaultSettings.yaml` you'll find the switches that govern the behaviour of `latexindent.pl`. If you're not sure where `defaultSettings.yaml` resides on your computer, don't worry as `indent.log` will tell you where to find it. `defaultSettings.yaml` is commented, but here is a description of what each switch is designed to do. The default value is given in each case; whenever you see *integer* in *this* section, assume that it must be greater than or equal to 0 unless otherwise stated.

For most of the settings in `defaultSettings.yaml` that are specified as integers, then we understand 0 to represent 'off' and 1 to represent 'on'. For fields that allow values other than 0 or 1, it is hoped that the specific context and associated commentary should make it clear which values are allowed.

```
fileExtensionPreference: <fields>
```

`latexindent.pl` can be called to act on a file without specifying the file extension. For example we can call

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile
```

in which case the script will look for `myfile` with the extensions specified in `fileExtensionPreference` in their numeric order. If no match is found, the script will exit. As with all of the fields, you should change and/or add to this as necessary.

LISTING 16: `fileExtensionPreference`

```
44 fileExtensionPreference:
45   .tex: 1
46   .sty: 2
47   .cls: 3
48   .bib: 4
```

Calling `latexindent.pl myfile` with the (default) settings specified in Listing 16 means that the script will first look for `myfile.tex`, then `myfile.sty`, `myfile.cls`, and finally `myfile.bib` in order⁴.

5.1 Backup and log file preferences

```
backupExtension: <extension name>
```

If you call `latexindent.pl` with the `-w` switch (to overwrite `myfile.tex`) then it will create a backup file before doing any indentation; the default extension is `.bak`, so, for example, `myfile.bak0` would be created when calling `latexindent.pl myfile.tex` for the first time.

By default, every time you subsequently call `latexindent.pl` with the `-w` to act upon `myfile.tex`, it will create successive back up files: `myfile.bak1`, `myfile.bak2`, etc.

⁴Throughout this manual, listings shown with line numbers represent code taken directly from `defaultSettings.yaml`.



`onlyOneBackUp`: *<integer>*

If you don't want a backup for every time that you call `latexindent.pl` (so you don't want `myfile.bak1`, `myfile.bak2`, etc) and you simply want `myfile.bak` (or whatever you chose `backupExtension` to be) then change `onlyOneBackUp` to 1; the default value of `onlyOneBackUp` is 0.

`maxNumberOfBackUps`: *<integer>*

Some users may only want a finite number of backup files, say at most 3, in which case, they can change this switch. The smallest value of `maxNumberOfBackUps` is 0 which will *not* prevent backup files being made; in this case, the behaviour will be dictated entirely by `onlyOneBackUp`. The default value of `maxNumberOfBackUps` is 0.

`cycleThroughBackUps`: *<integer>*

Some users may wish to cycle through backup files, by deleting the oldest backup file and keeping only the most recent; for example, with `maxNumberOfBackUps`: 4, and `cycleThroughBackUps` set to 1 then the copy procedure given below would be obeyed.

```
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak1 to myfile.bak0
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak2 to myfile.bak1
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak3 to myfile.bak2
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak4 to myfile.bak3
```

The default value of `cycleThroughBackUps` is 0.

`logFilePreferences`: *<fields>*

`latexindent.pl` writes information to `indent.log`, some of which can be customized by changing `logFilePreferences`; see Listing 17. If you load your own user settings (see Section 4 on page 16) then `latexindent.pl` will detail them in `indent.log`; you can choose not to have the details logged by switching `showEveryYamlRead` to 0. Once all of your settings have been loaded, you can see the amalgamated settings in the log file by switching `showAmalgamatedSettings` to 1, if you wish.

LISTING 17: `logFilePreferences`

```
88 logFilePreferences:
89   showEveryYamlRead: 1
90   showAmalgamatedSettings: 0
91   showDecorationStartCodeBlockTrace: 0
92   showDecorationFinishCodeBlockTrace: 0
93   endLogFileWith: '-----'
94   showGitHubInfoFooter: 1
95   Dumper:
96     Terse: 1
97     Indent: 1
98     Useqq: 1
99     Deparse: 1
100    Quotekeys: 0
101    Sortkeys: 1
102    Pair: " => "
```

When either of the trace modes (see page 10) are active, you will receive detailed information in `indent.log`. You can specify character strings to appear before and after the notification of a found code block using, respectively, `showDecorationStartCodeBlockTrace` and `showDecorationFinishCodeBlockTrace`. A demonstration is given in appendix E on page 144.



The log file will end with the characters given in `endLogFileWith`, and will report the GitHub address of `latexindent.pl` to the log file if `showGitHubInfoFooter` is set to 1.

U: 2021-03-14

Note: `latexindent.pl` no longer uses the `log4perl` module to handle the creation of the logfile.

U: 2021-06-19

Some of the options for Perl's Dumper module can be specified in Listing 17; see [9] and [8] for more information. These options will mostly be helpful for those calling `latexindent.pl` with the `-tt` option described in Section 3.1.

5.2 Verbatim code blocks

`verbatimEnvironments`: *<fields>*

A field that contains a list of environments that you would like left completely alone – no indentation will be performed on environments that you have specified in this field, see Listing 18.

LISTING 18: `verbatimEnvironments`

```
106 verbatimEnvironments:
107     verbatim: 1
108     lstlisting: 1
109     minted: 1
```

LISTING 19: `verbatimCommands`

```
112 verbatimCommands:
113     verb: 1
114     lstinline: 1
```

Note that if you put an environment in `verbatimEnvironments` and in other fields such as `lookForAlignDelims` or `noAdditionalIndent` then `latexindent.pl` will *always* prioritize `verbatimEnvironments`.

N: 2021-10-30

You can, optionally, specify the `verbatim` field using the `name` field which takes a regular expression as its argument; thank you to [36] for contributing this feature.

For demonstration, then assuming that your file contains the environments `latexcode`, `latexcode*`, `pythoncode` and `pythoncode*`, then the listings given in Listings 20 and 21 are equivalent.

LISTING 20: `nameAsRegex1.yaml`

```
verbatimEnvironments:
    latexcode: 1
    latexcode*: 1
    pythoncode: 1
    pythoncode*: 1
```

LISTING 21: `nameAsRegex2.yaml`

```
verbatimEnvironments:
    nameAsRegex:
        name: '\w+code\*?'
        lookForThis: 1
```

With reference to Listing 21:

- the `name` field as specified here means *any word followed by the word code, optionally followed by **;
- we have used `nameAsRegex` to identify this field, but you can use any description you like;
- the `lookForThis` field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

`verbatimCommands`: *<fields>*

A field that contains a list of commands that are verbatim commands, for example `\lstinline`; any commands populated in this field are protected from line breaking routines (only relevant if the `-m` is active, see Section 6 on page 67).

With reference to Listing 19, by default `latexindent.pl` looks for `\verb` immediately followed by another character, and then it takes the body as anything up to the next occurrence of the character; this means that, for example, `\verb!x+3!` is treated as a `verbatimCommands`.

N: 2021-10-30

You can, optionally, specify the `verbatimCommands` field using the `name` field which takes a regular expression as its argument; thank you to [36] for contributing this feature.

For demonstration, then assuming that your file contains the commands `verbinline`, `myinline` then the listings given in Listings 22 and 23 are equivalent.



LISTING 22: nameAsRegex3.yaml

```
verbatimCommands:
  verbinline: 1
  myinline: 1
```

LISTING 23: nameAsRegex4.yaml

```
verbatimCommands:
  nameAsRegex:
    name: '\w+inline'
    lookForThis: 1
```

With reference to Listing 23:

- the name field as specified here means *any word followed by the word inline*;
- we have used nameAsRegex to identify this field, but you can use any description you like;
- the lookForThis field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

```
noIndentBlock: {fields}
```

If you have a block of code that you don't want `latexindent.pl` to touch (even if it is *not* a verbatim-like environment) then you can wrap it in an environment from `noIndentBlock`; you can use any name you like for this, provided you populate it as demonstrate in Listing 24.

LISTING 24: noIndentBlock

```
119 noIndentBlock:
120   noindent: 1
121   cmhtest: 1
```

Of course, you don't want to have to specify these as null environments in your code, so you use them with a comment symbol, `%`, followed by as many spaces (possibly none) as you like; see Listing 25 for example.

LISTING 25: noIndentBlock.tex

```
% \begin{noindent}
some before text
    this code
        won't
    be touched
        by
        latexindent.pl!
some after text
% \end{noindent}
```

Important note: it is assumed that the `noindent` block statements specified in this way appear on their own line.

The `noIndentBlock` fields can also be specified in terms of `begin` and `end` fields. We use the code in Listing 26 to demonstrate this feature.

LISTING 26: noIndentBlock1.tex

```
some before text
    this code
        won't
    be touched
        by
        latexindent.pl!
some after text
```

The settings given in Listings 27 and 28 are equivalent:



LISTING 27: noindent1.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  demo:
    begin: 'some\hbefore'
    body: '.*?'
    end: 'some\hafter\htext'
    lookForThis: 1
```

LISTING 28: noindent2.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  demo:
    begin: 'some\hbefore'
    end: 'some\hafter\htext'
```

LISTING 29: noindent3.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  demo:
    begin: 'some\hbefore'
    body: '.*?'
    end: 'some\hafter\htext'
    lookForThis: 0
```

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l noindent1.yaml noindent1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l noindent2.yaml noindent1
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 30.

LISTING 30: noIndentBlock1.tex using Listing 27 or Listing 28

```
some before text
      this code
            won't
      be touched
            by
      latexindent.pl!
some after text
```

The begin, body and end fields for noIndentBlock are all *regular expressions*. If the body field is not specified, then it takes a default value of `.*?` which is written explicitly in Listing 27. In this context, we interpret `.*?` in words as *the fewest number of characters (possibly none) until the 'end' field is reached*.

The lookForThis field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

Using Listing 29 demonstrates setting lookForThis to 0 (off); running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l noindent3.yaml noindent1
```

gives the output in Listing 31.

LISTING 31: noIndentBlock1.tex using Listing 29

```
some before text
this code
won't
be touched
by
latexindent.pl!
some after text
```

We will demonstrate this feature later in the documentation in Listing 537.

You can, optionally, specify the noIndentBlock field using the name field which takes a regular expression as its argument; thank you to [36] for contributing this feature.

For demonstration, then assuming that your file contains the environments testnoindent, testnoindent* then the listings given in Listings 32 and 33 are equivalent.



LISTING 32: nameAsRegex5.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  mytest:
    begin: '\\begin\\{testnoindent\\*?\\}'
    end: '\\end\\{testnoindent\\*?\\}'
```

LISTING 33: nameAsRegex6.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  nameAsRegex:
    name: '\\w+noindent\\*?'
    lookForThis: 1
```

With reference to Listing 33:

- the name field as specified here means *any word followed by the word noindent, optionally followed by **;
- we have used nameAsRegex to identify this field, but you can use any description you like;
- the lookForThis field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

5.3 filecontents and preamble

```
fileContentsEnvironments: <field>
```

Before latexindent.pl determines the difference between preamble (if any) and the main document, it first searches for any of the environments specified in fileContentsEnvironments, see Listing 34. The behaviour of latexindent.pl on these environments is determined by their location (preamble or not), and the value indentPreamble, discussed next.

LISTING 34: fileContentsEnvironments

```
125 fileContentsEnvironments:
126     filecontents: 1
127     filecontents*: 1
```

```
indentPreamble: 0|1
```

The preamble of a document can sometimes contain some trickier code for latexindent.pl to operate upon. By default, latexindent.pl won't try to operate on the preamble (as indentPreamble is set to 0, by default), but if you'd like latexindent.pl to try then change indentPreamble to 1.

```
lookForPreamble: <fields>
```

Not all files contain preamble; for example, sty, cls and bib files typically do *not*. Referencing Listing 35, if you set, for example, .tex to 0, then regardless of the setting of the value of indentPreamble, preamble will not be assumed when operating upon .tex files.

LISTING 35: lookForPreamble

```
133 lookForPreamble:
134     .tex: 1
135     .sty: 0
136     .cls: 0
137     .bib: 0
```

```
preambleCommandsBeforeEnvironments: 0|1
```

Assuming that latexindent.pl is asked to operate upon the preamble of a document, when this switch is set to 0 then environment code blocks will be sought first, and then command code blocks. When this switch is set to 1, commands will be sought first. The example that first motivated this switch contained the code given in Listing 36.

LISTING 36: Motivating `preambleCommandsBeforeEnvironments`

```
...
preheadhook={\begin{mdframed}[style=myframedstyle]},
postfoothook=\end{mdframed},
...
```

5.4 Indentation and horizontal space

`defaultIndent`: *<horizontal space>*

This is the default indentation used in the absence of other details for the code block with which we are working. The default value is `\t` which means a tab; we will explore customisation beyond `defaultIndent` in Section 5.8 on page 44.

If you're interested in experimenting with `latexindent.pl` then you can *remove* all indentation by setting `defaultIndent`: `""`.

`removeTrailingWhitespace`: *<fields>*

Trailing white space can be removed both *before* and *after* processing the document, as detailed in Listing 37; each of the fields can take the values 0 or 1. See Listings 428 to 430 on pages 101–102 for before and after results. Thanks to [32] for providing this feature.

LISTING 37:
`removeTrailingWhitespace`

```
150 removeTrailingWhitespace:
151   beforeProcessing: 0
152   afterProcessing: 1
```

LISTING 38: `removeTrailingWhitespace` (alt)

```
removeTrailingWhitespace: 1
```

N: 2017-06-28

You can specify `removeTrailingWhitespace` simply as 0 or 1, if you wish; in this case, `latexindent.pl` will set both `beforeProcessing` and `afterProcessing` to the value you specify; see Listing 38.

5.5 Aligning at delimiters

`lookForAlignDelims`: *<fields>*

This contains a list of code blocks that are operated upon in a special way by `latexindent.pl` (see Listing 39). In fact, the fields in `lookForAlignDelims` can actually take two different forms: the *basic* version is shown in Listing 39 and the *advanced* version in Listing 42; we will discuss each in turn.

LISTING 39: `lookForAlignDelims` (basic)

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular: 1
  tabularx: 1
  longtable: 1
  array: 1
  matrix: 1
  ...
```

Specifying code blocks in this field instructs `latexindent.pl` to try and align each column by its alignment delimiters. It does have some limitations (discussed further in Section 10), but in many cases it will produce results such as those in Listings 40 and 41.



If you find that `latexindent.pl` does not perform satisfactorily on such environments then you can set the relevant key to 0, for example `tabular: 0`; alternatively, if you just want to ignore *specific* instances of the environment, you could wrap them in something from `noIndentBlock` (see Listing 24 on page 23).

LISTING 40: `tabular1.tex`

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
1& 2 & & 3 & & 4\\
5& & 6 & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 41: `tabular1.tex` default output

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
1 & 2 & & 3 & & 4 \\
5 & & 6 & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

If, for example, you wish to remove the alignment of the `\\` within a delimiter-aligned block, then the advanced form of `lookForAlignDelims` shown in Listing 42 is for you.

LISTING 42: `lookForAlignDelims` (advanced)

```
155 lookForAlignDelims:
156   tabular:
157     delims: 1
158     alignDoubleBackSlash: 1
159     spacesBeforeDoubleBackSlash: 1
160     multiColumnGrouping: 0
161     alignRowsWithoutMaxDelims: 1
162     spacesBeforeAmpersand: 1
163     spacesAfterAmpersand: 1
164     justification: left
165     alignFinalDoubleBackSlash: 0
166     dontMeasure: 0
167     delimiterRegEx: '(?!\\)(\\&)'
168     delimiterJustification: left
169     lookForChildCodeBlocks: 1
170   tabularx:
171     delims: 1
```

Note that you can use a mixture of the basic and advanced form: in Listing 42 `tabular` and `tabularx` are advanced and `longtable` is basic. When using the advanced form, each field should receive at least 1 sub-field, and *can* (but does not have to) receive any of the following fields:

- `delims`: binary switch (0 or 1) equivalent to simply specifying, for example, `tabular: 1` in the basic version shown in Listing 39. If `delims` is set to 0 then the align at ampersand routine will not be called for this code block (default: 1);
- `alignDoubleBackSlash`: binary switch (0 or 1) to determine if `\\` should be aligned (default: 1);
- `spacesBeforeDoubleBackSlash`: optionally, specifies the number (integer ≥ 0) of spaces to be inserted before `\\` (default: 1);
- `multiColumnGrouping`: binary switch (0 or 1) that details if `latexindent.pl` should group columns above and below a `\multicolumn` command (default: 0);
- `alignRowsWithoutMaxDelims`: binary switch (0 or 1) that details if rows that do not contain the maximum number of delimiters should be formatted so as to have the ampersands aligned (default: 1);
- `spacesBeforeAmpersand`: optionally specifies the number (integer ≥ 0) of spaces to be placed *before* ampersands (default: 1);
- `spacesAfterAmpersand`: optionally specifies the number (integer ≥ 0) of spaces to be placed *after* ampersands (default: 1);
- `justification`: optionally specifies the justification of each cell as either *left* or *right* (default: left);

U: 2018-01-13

N: 2017-06-19

N: 2017-06-19

N: 2018-01-13

N: 2018-01-13

N: 2018-01-13



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular4.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular6.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular7.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular8.yaml
```

we obtain the respective outputs given in Listings 51 to 58.

LISTING 51: tabular2.tex default output

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A                & & B                & & C                & & D                & \\
AAA              & & BBB              & & CCC              & & DDD              & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & \\
one              & & two              & & three & four & & \\
five             & & & & six & & & \\
seven            & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 52: tabular2.tex using Listing 44

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A    & B                & & C    & D                & \\
AAA  & BBB              & & CCC  & DDD              & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & \\
one  & two              & & three & four              & \\
five & & & six  & & \\
seven & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 53: tabular2.tex using Listing 45

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A    & B    & C    & D                & \\
AAA  & BBB  & CCC  & DDD              & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & \\
one  & two  & three & four              & \\
five & & six  & & \\
seven & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 54: tabular2.tex using Listings 44 and 46

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A                & & B                & & C                & & D                & \\
AAA              & & BBB              & & CCC              & & DDD              & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & \\
one              & & two              & & three & four & & \\
five             & & & & six  & & & \\
seven            & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```



LISTING 55: tabular2.tex using Listings 44 and 47

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & & & C      & & D      & & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & & & three  & & four   & & & & \\
five   & & & & & & & & six    & & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 56: tabular2.tex using Listings 44 and 48

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & & & C      & & D      & & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & & & three  & & four   & & & & \\
five   & & & & & & & & six    & & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 57: tabular2.tex using Listings 44 and 49

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & & & C      & & D      & & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & & & three  & & four   & & & & \\
five   & & & & & & & & six    & & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 58: tabular2.tex using Listings 44 and 50

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & & & C      & & D      & & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & & & three  & & four   & & & & \\
five   & & & & & & & & six    & & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

Notice in particular:

- in both Listings 51 and 52 all rows have been aligned at the ampersand, even those that do not contain the maximum number of ampersands (3 ampersands, in this case);
- in Listing 51 the columns have been aligned at the ampersand;
- in Listing 52 the `\multicolumn` command has grouped the 2 columns beneath *and* above it, because `multiColumnGrouping` is set to 1 in Listing 44;
- in Listing 53 rows 3 and 6 have *not* been aligned at the ampersand, because `alignRowsWithoutMaxDelims` has been set to 0 in Listing 45; however, the `\\` have still been aligned;
- in Listing 54 the columns beneath and above the `\multicolumn` commands have been grouped (because `multiColumnGrouping` is set to 1), and there are at least 4 spaces *before* each aligned ampersand because `spacesBeforeAmpersand` is set to 4;
- in Listing 55 the columns beneath and above the `\multicolumn` commands have been grouped (because `multiColumnGrouping` is set to 1), and there are at least 4 spaces *after* each aligned ampersand because `spacesAfterAmpersand` is set to 4;



- in Listing 56 the `\` have *not* been aligned, because `alignDoubleBackSlash` is set to 0, otherwise the output is the same as Listing 52;
- in Listing 57 the `\` have been aligned, and because `spacesBeforeDoubleBackSlash` is set to 0, there are no spaces ahead of them; the output is otherwise the same as Listing 52;
- in Listing 58 the cells have been *right*-justified; note that cells above and below the `\multicol` statements have still been group correctly, because of the settings in Listing 44.

5.5.1 lookForAlignDelims: spacesBeforeAmpersand

U: 2021-06-19

The `spacesBeforeAmpersand` can be specified in a few different ways. The *basic* form is demonstrated in Listing 46, but we can customise the behaviour further by specifying if we would like this value to change if it encounters a *leading blank column*; that is, when the first column contains only zero-width entries. We refer to this as the *advanced* form.

We demonstrate this feature in relation to Listing 59; upon running the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -o+=-default
```

then we receive the default output given in Listing 60.

LISTING 59: aligned1.tex

```
\begin{aligned}
& a \& b, \backslash
& c \& d.
\end{aligned}
```

LISTING 60: aligned1-default.tex

```
\begin{aligned}
& a \& b, \backslash
& c \& d.
\end{aligned}
```

The settings in Listings 61 to 64 are all equivalent; we have used the not-yet discussed `noAdditionalIndent` field (see Section 5.8 on page 44) which will assist in the demonstration in what follows.

LISTING 61: sba1.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned: 1
```

LISTING 62: sba2.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand: 1
```

LISTING 63: sba3.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      default: 1
```

LISTING 64: sba4.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      leadingBlankColumn: 1
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba2.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba4.yaml
```

then we receive the (same) output given in Listing 65; we note that there is *one space* before each ampersand.

LISTING 65: aligned1-mod1.tex

```
\begin{aligned}
& a \& b, \backslash
& c \& d.
\end{aligned}
```



We note in particular:

- Listing 61 demonstrates the *basic* form for `lookForAlignDelims`; in this case, the default values are specified as in Listing 42 on page 27;
- Listing 62 demonstrates the *advanced* form for `lookForAlignDelims` and specified `spacesBeforeAmpersand`. The default value is 1;
- Listing 63 demonstrates the new *advanced* way to specify `spacesBeforeAmpersand`, and for us to set the default value that sets the number of spaces before ampersands which are *not* in leading blank columns. The default value is 1.

We note that `leadingBlankColumn` has not been specified in Listing 63, and it will inherit the value from default;

- Listing 64 demonstrates spaces to be used before ampersands for *leading blank columns*. We note that *default* has not been specified, and it will be set to 1 by default.

We can customise the space before the ampersand in the *leading blank column* of Listing 65 by using either of Listings 66 and 67, which are equivalent.

LISTING 66: sba5.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      leadingBlankColumn: 0
```

LISTING 67: sba6.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      leadingBlankColumn: 0
    default: 1
```

Upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba6.yaml
```

then we receive the (same) output given in Listing 68. We note that the space before the ampersand in the *leading blank column* has been set to 0 by Listing 67.

We can demonstrated this feature further using the settings in Listing 70 which give the output in Listing 69.

LISTING 68: aligned1-mod5.tex

```
\begin{aligned}
& a \& b, \\
& c \& d.
\end{aligned}
```

LISTING 69: aligned1.tex using Listing 70

```
\begin{aligned}
& a\& b, \\
& c\& d.
\end{aligned}
```

LISTING 70: sba7.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      leadingBlankColumn: 3
    default: 0
```

5.5.2 lookForAlignDelims: alignFinalDoubleBackSlash

N: 2020-03-21

We explore the `alignFinalDoubleBackSlash` feature by using the file in Listing 71. Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular4.tex -o+=-default
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular4.tex -o+=-FDBS
-y="lookForAlignDelims:tabular:alignFinalDoubleBackSlash:1"
```

then we receive the respective outputs given in Listing 72 and Listing 73.



LISTING 71: tabular4.tex	LISTING 72: tabular4-default.tex	LISTING 73: tabular4-FDBS.tex
<pre>\begin{tabular}{lc} Name & \shortstack{Hi \\ Lo} \\ Foo & Bar \\ \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>\begin{tabular}{lc} Name & \shortstack{Hi \\ Lo} \\ Foo & Bar \\ \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>\begin{tabular}{lc} Name & \shortstack{Hi \\ Lo} \\ Foo & Bar \\ \end{tabular}</pre>

We note that in:

- Listing 72, by default, the *first* set of double back slashes in the first row of the tabular environment have been used for alignment;
- Listing 73, the *final* set of double back slashes in the first row have been used, because we specified `alignFinalDoubleBackSlash` as 1.

As of Version 3.0, the alignment routine works on mandatory and optional arguments within commands, and also within ‘special’ code blocks (see `specialBeginEnd` on page 38); for example, assuming that you have a command called `\matrix` and that it is populated within `lookForAlignDelims` (which it is, by default), and that you run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl matrix1.tex
```

then the before-and-after results shown in Listings 74 and 75 are achievable by default.

LISTING 74: matrix1.tex	LISTING 75: matrix1.tex default output
<pre>\matrix [1&2 &3\\ 4&5&6]{ 7&8 &9\\ 10&11&12 }</pre>	<pre>\matrix [1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6]{ 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 10 & 11 & 12 }</pre>

If you have blocks of code that you wish to align at the & character that are *not* wrapped in, for example, `\begin{tabular} ... \end{tabular}`, then you can use the mark up illustrated in Listing 76; the default output is shown in Listing 77. Note that the `%*` must be next to each other, but that there can be any number of spaces (possibly none) between the `*` and `\begin{tabular}`; note also that you may use any environment name that you have specified in `lookForAlignDelims`.

LISTING 76: align-block.tex	LISTING 77: align-block.tex default output
<pre>%* \begin{tabular} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 5 & & 6 & \\ %* \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>%* \begin{tabular} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 5 & & 6 & \\ %* \end{tabular}</pre>

With reference to Table 2 on page 45 and the, yet undiscussed, fields of `noAdditionalIndent` and `indentRules` (see Section 5.8 on page 44), these comment-marked blocks are considered environments.

5.5.3 lookForAlignDelims: the dontMeasure feature

The `lookForAlignDelims` field can, optionally, receive the `dontMeasure` option which can be specified in a few different ways. We will explore this feature in relation to the code given in Listing 78; the default output is shown in Listing 79.

LISTING 78: tabular-DM.tex	LISTING 79: tabular-DM.tex default output
<pre>\begin{tabular}{cccc} aaaaaa&bbbb&ccc&dd\\ 11&2&33&4\\ 5&66&7&8 \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>\begin{tabular}{cccc} aaaaaa & bbbb & ccc & dd \\ 11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\ 5 & 66 & 7 & 8 \end{tabular}</pre>

N: 2020-03-21



The `dontMeasure` field can be specified as `largest`, and in which case, the largest element will not be measured; with reference to the YAML file given in Listing 81, we can run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure1.yaml
```

and receive the output given in Listing 80.

LISTING 80: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 81

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 81: dontMeasure1.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure: largest
```

We note that the *largest* column entries have not contributed to the measuring routine.

The `dontMeasure` field can also be specified in the form demonstrated in Listing 83. On running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure2.yaml
```

we receive the output in Listing 82.

LISTING 82: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 83 or Listing 85

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 83: dontMeasure2.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      - aaaaaa
      - bbbbbb
      - ccc
      - dd
```

We note that in Listing 83 we have specified entries not to be measured, one entry per line.

The `dontMeasure` field can also be specified in the forms demonstrated in Listing 85 and Listing 86. Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure4.yaml
```

we receive the output given in Listing 84

LISTING 84: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 85 or Listing 86

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 85: dontMeasure3.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        this: aaaaaa
        applyTo: cell
      -
        this: bbbbbb
      - ccc
      - dd
```

LISTING 86: dontMeasure4.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        regex: [a-z]
        applyTo: cell
```

We note that in:

- Listing 85 we have specified entries not to be measured, each one has a *string* in the *this* field, together with an optional specification of *applyTo* as *cell*;



- Listing 86 we have specified entries not to be measured as a *regular expression* using the `regex` field, together with an optional specification of `applyTo` as `cell` field, together with an optional specification of `applyTo` as `cell`.

In both cases, the default value of `applyTo` is `cell`, and does not need to be specified.

We may also specify the `applyTo` field as `row`, a demonstration of which is given in Listing 88; upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure5.yaml
```

we receive the output in Listing 87.

LISTING 87: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 88

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 88: dontMeasure5.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        this: aaaaaa&bbbb&ccc&dd\\
        applyTo: row
```

Finally, the `applyTo` field can be specified as `row`, together with a *regex* expression. For example, for the settings given in Listing 90, upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure6.yaml
```

we receive the output in Listing 89.

LISTING 89: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 90

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 90: dontMeasure6.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        regex: [a-z]
        applyTo: row
```

5.5.4 lookForAlignDelims: the `delimiterRegex` and `delimiterJustification` feature

N: 2020-03-21

The delimiter alignment will, by default, align code blocks at the ampersand character. The behaviour is controlled by the `delimiterRegex` field within `lookForAlignDelims`; the default value is `'(?<!\)(\&)'`, which can be read as: *an ampersand, as long as it is not immediately preceded by a backslash*.



Warning!

Important: note the 'capturing' parenthesis in the `(\&)` which are necessary; if you intend to customise this field, then be sure to include them appropriately.

We demonstrate how to customise this with respect to the code given in Listing 91; the default output from `latexindent.pl` is given in Listing 92.

LISTING 91: tabbing.tex

```
\begin{tabbing}
aa \=   bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
\>2\> 1 \> 7 \> 3 \\
\>3 \> 2\>8\> 3 \\
\>4 \>2 \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 92: tabbing.tex default output

```
\begin{tabbing}
aa \=   bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
\>2\> 1 \> 7 \> 3 \\
\>3 \> 2\>8\> 3 \\
\>4 \>2 \\
\end{tabbing}
```



Let's say that we wish to align the code at either the `\=` or `\>`. We employ the settings given in Listing 94 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing.tex -l=delimiterRegEx1.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 93.

LISTING 93: tabbing.tex using Listing 94

```
\begin{tabbing}
  aa \= bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
    \> 2 \> 1 \> 7 \> 3 \\
    \> 3 \> 2 \> 8 \> 3 \\
    \> 4 \> 2           \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 94: delimiterRegEx1.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\\"(?:=|>))'
```

We note that:

- in Listing 93 the code has been aligned, as intended, at both the `\=` and `\>`;
- in Listing 94 we have heeded the warning and captured the expression using grouping parenthesis, specified a backslash using `\\` and said that it must be followed by either `=` or `>`.

We can explore `delimiterRegEx` a little further using the settings in Listing 96 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing.tex -l=delimiterRegEx2.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 95.

LISTING 95: tabbing.tex using Listing 96

```
\begin{tabbing}
  aa \=   bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
    \> 2 \> 1 \> 7 \> 3           \\
    \> 3 \> 2 \> 8 \> 3           \\
    \> 4 \> 2                   \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 96: delimiterRegEx2.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\\">)'
```

We note that only the `\>` have been aligned.

Of course, the other `lookForAlignDelims` options can be used alongside the `delimiterRegEx`; regardless of the type of delimiter being used (ampersand or anything else), the fields from Listing 42 on page 27 remain the same; for example, using the settings in Listing 98, and running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing.tex -l=delimiterRegEx3.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 97.

LISTING 97: tabbing.tex using Listing 98

```
\begin{tabbing}
  aa\=bb\=cc\=dd\=ee \\
    \>2 \>1 \>7 \>3 \\
    \>3 \>2 \>8 \>3 \\
    \>4 \>2           \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 98: delimiterRegEx3.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\\"(?:=|>))'
    spacesBeforeAmpersand: 0
    spacesAfterAmpersand: 0
```

It is possible that delimiters specified within `delimiterRegEx` can be of different lengths. Consider the file in Listing 99, and associated YAML in Listing 101. Note that the Listing 101 specifies the option for the delimiter to be either `#` or `\>`, *which are different lengths*. Upon running the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing1.tex -l=delimiterRegEx4.yaml -o=+-mod4
```

we receive the output in Listing 100.

LISTING 99: tabbing1.tex

```
\begin{tabbing}
1#22\>333\\
xxx#aaa#yyyyy\\
.##&\\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 100: tabbing1-mod4.tex

```
\begin{tabbing}
1 # 22 \> 333 \\
xxx # aaa # yyyyy \\
. # # & \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 101: delimiterRegEx4.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
tabbing:
delimiterRegEx: '(#|\>)'
```

You can set the *delimiter* justification as either *left* (default) or *right*, which will only have effect when delimiters in the same column have different lengths. Using the settings in Listing 103 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing1.tex -l=delimiterRegEx5.yaml -o=+-mod5
```

gives the output in Listing 102.

LISTING 102: tabbing1-mod5.tex

```
\begin{tabbing}
1 # 22 \> 333 \\
xxx # aaa # yyyyy \\
. # # & \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 103: delimiterRegEx5.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
tabbing:
delimiterRegEx: '(#|\>)'
delimiterJustification: right
```

Note that in Listing 102 the second set of delimiters have been *right aligned* – it is quite subtle!

5.5.5 lookForAlignDelims: lookForChildCodeBlocks

N: 2021-12-13

There may be scenarios in which you would prefer to instruct `latexindent.pl` *not* to search for child blocks; in which case setting `lookForChildCodeBlocks` to 0 may be a good way to proceed.

Using the settings from Listing 81 on page 34 on the file in Listing 104 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM-1.tex -l=dontMeasure1.yaml -o=+-mod1
```

gives the output in Listing 105.

LISTING 104: tabular-DM-1.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
1&2\only<2->{\ \\
3&4}
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 105: tabular-DM-1-mod1.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
1 & 2\only<2->{\ \\
3 & 4}
\end{tabular}
```

We can improve the output from Listing 105 by employing the settings in Listing 107

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM-1.tex -l=dontMeasure1a.yaml -o=+-mod1a
```

which gives the output in Listing 107.

LISTING 106: tabular-DM-1-mod1a.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
1 & 2\only<2->{\ \\
3 & 4}
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 107: dontMeasure1a.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
tabular:
dontMeasure: largest
lookForChildCodeBlocks: 0
```



5.6 Indent after items, specials and headings

`indentAfterItems: {fields}`

The environment names specified in `indentAfterItems` tell `latexindent.pl` to look for `\item` commands; if these switches are set to 1 then indentation will be performed so as indent the code after each item. A demonstration is given in Listings 109 and 110

LISTING 108: `indentAfterItems`

```
229 indentAfterItems:
230   itemize: 1
231   enumerate: 1
232   description: 1
233   list: 1
```

LISTING 109: `items1.tex`

```
\begin{itemize}
\item some text here
some more text here
some more text here
\item another item
some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

LISTING 110: `items1.tex` default output

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item some text here
    some more text here
    some more text here
  \item another item
    some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

`itemNames: {fields}`

If you have your own item commands (perhaps you prefer to use `myitem`, for example) then you can put populate them in `itemNames`. For example, users of the `exam` document class might like to add parts to `indentAfterItems` and part to `itemNames` to their user settings (see Section 4 on page 16 for details of how to configure user settings, and Listing 13 on page 17 in particular.)

LISTING 111: `itemNames`

```
239 itemNames:
240   item: 1
241   myitem: 1
```

`specialBeginEnd: {fields}`

U: 2017-08-21

The fields specified in `specialBeginEnd` are, in their default state, focused on math mode begin and end statements, but there is no requirement for this to be the case; Listing 112 shows the default settings of `specialBeginEnd`.

LISTING 112: `specialBeginEnd`

```
245 specialBeginEnd:
246   displayMath:
247     begin: '\\\[
248     end: '\\]'
249     lookForThis: 1
250   inlineMath:
251     begin: '(?<!\$)(?<!\$)\$(?!\$)'
252     end: '(?<!\$)\$(?!\$)'
253     lookForThis: 1
254   displayMathTeX:
255     begin: '\$\$'
256     end: '\$\$'
257     lookForThis: 1
258   specialBeforeCommand: 0
```

The field `displayMath` represents `\[...]`, `inlineMath` represents `...$` and `displayMathTeX` represents `$$...$$`. You can, of course, rename these in your own YAML files (see Section 4.2 on page 17); indeed, you might like to set up your own special begin and end statements.

A demonstration of the before-and-after results are shown in Listings 113 and 114.



LISTING 113: special1.tex before

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

LISTING 114: special1.tex default output

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

For each field, `lookForThis` is set to 1 by default, which means that `latexindent.pl` will look for this pattern; you can tell `latexindent.pl` not to look for the pattern, by setting `lookForThis` to 0.

There are examples in which it is advantageous to search for `specialBeginEnd` fields *before* searching for commands, and the `specialBeforeCommand` switch controls this behaviour. For example, consider the file shown in Listing 115.

LISTING 115: specialLR.tex

```
\begin{equation}
\left[
\sqrt{
a+b
}
\right]
\end{equation}
```

Now consider the YAML files shown in Listings 116 and 117

LISTING 116: specialsLeftRight.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  leftRightSquare:
    begin: '\\left\[
    end: '\\right\]'
    lookForThis: 1
```

LISTING 117:
specialBeforeCommand.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  specialBeforeCommand: 1
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl specialLR.tex -l=specialsLeftRight.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl specialLR.tex -l=specialsLeftRight.yaml,specialBeforeCommand.yaml
```

we receive the respective outputs in Listings 118 and 119.

LISTING 118: specialLR.tex using
Listing 116

```
\begin{equation}
\left[
\sqrt{
a+b
}
\right]
\end{equation}
```

LISTING 119: specialLR.tex using
Listings 116 and 117

```
\begin{equation}
\left[
\sqrt{
a+b
}
\right]
\end{equation}
```

Notice that in:

- Listing 118 the `\left` has been treated as a *command*, with one optional argument;
- Listing 119 the `specialBeginEnd` pattern in Listing 116 has been obeyed because Listing 117 specifies that the `specialBeginEnd` should be sought *before* commands.

You can, optionally, specify the middle field for anything that you specify in `specialBeginEnd`. For example, let's consider the `.tex` file in Listing 120.

N: 2017-08-21

N: 2018-04-27



LISTING 120: special2.tex

```
\If
something 0
\ElsIf
something 1
\ElsIf
something 2
\ElsIf
something 3
\Else
something 4
\EndIf
```

Upon saving the YAML settings in Listings 121 and 123 and running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special2.tex -l=middle
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special2.tex -l=middle1
```

then we obtain the output given in Listings 122 and 124.

LISTING 121: middle.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  If:
    begin: '\\If'
    middle: '\\ElsIf'
    end: '\\EndIf'
    lookForThis: 1
```

LISTING 122: special2.tex using Listing 121

```
\If
  something 0
\ElsIf
  something 1
\ElsIf
  something 2
\ElsIf
  something 3
\Else
  something 4
\EndIf
```

LISTING 123: middle1.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  If:
    begin: '\\If'
    middle:
      - '\\ElsIf'
      - '\\Else'
    end: '\\EndIf'
    lookForThis: 1
```

LISTING 124: special2.tex using Listing 123

```
\If
  something 0
\ElsIf
  something 1
\ElsIf
  something 2
\ElsIf
  something 3
\Else
  something 4
\EndIf
```

We note that:

- in Listing 122 the bodies of each of the `Elsif` statements have been indented appropriately;
- the `Else` statement has *not* been indented appropriately in Listing 122 – read on!
- we have specified multiple settings for the `middle` field using the syntax demonstrated in Listing 123 so that the body of the `Else` statement has been indented appropriately in Listing 124.

You may specify fields in `specialBeginEnd` to be treated as verbatim code blocks by changing `lookForThis` to be `verbatim`.

For example, beginning with the code in Listing 126 and the YAML in Listing 125, and running



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special3.tex -l=special-verb1
```

then the output in Listing 126 is unchanged.

LISTING 125: special-verb1.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  displayMath:
    lookForThis: verbatim
```

LISTING 126: special3.tex and output using Listing 125

```
\[
  special code
blocks
  can be
  treated
  as verbatim\]
```

We can combine the `specialBeginEnd` with the `lookForAlignDelims` feature. We begin with the code in Listing 127.

LISTING 127: special-align.tex

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path (A) edge node {0,1,L}(B)
  edge node {1,1,R} (C)
  (B) edge [loop above] node {1,1,L}(B)
  edge node {0,1,L}(C)
  (C) edge node {0,1,L}(D)
  edge [bend left] node {1,0,R}(E)
  (D) edge[loop below] node {1,1,R}(D)
  edge node {0,1,R}(A)
  (E) edge[bend left] node {1,0,R} (A);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Let's assume that our goal is to align the code at the edge and node text; we employ the code given in Listing 128 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special-align.tex -l edge-node1.yaml -o=+-mod1
```

to receive the output in Listing 129.

LISTING 128: edge-node1.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  path:
    begin: '\\path'
    end: ';'
    lookForThis: 1
    specialBeforeCommand: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  path:
    delimiterRegex: '(edge|node)'
```

LISTING 129: special-align.tex using Listing 128

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path (A) edge node {0,1,L}(B)
  edge node {1,1,R} (C)
  (B) edge [loop above] node {1,1,L}(B)
  edge node {0,1,L}(C)
  (C) edge node {0,1,L}(D)
  edge [bend left] node {1,0,R}(E)
  (D) edge [loop below] node {1,1,R}(D)
  edge node {0,1,R}(A)
  (E) edge [bend left] node {1,0,R} (A);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

The output in Listing 129 is not quite ideal. We can tweak the settings within Listing 128 in order to improve the output; in particular, we employ the code in Listing 130 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special-align.tex -l edge-node2.yaml -o=+-mod2
```

to receive the output in Listing 131.



LISTING 130: edge-node2.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  path:
    begin: '\\path'
    end: ';'
  specialBeforeCommand: 1

lookForAlignDelims:
  path:
    delimiterRegEx:
      '(edge|node|h*\\{[0-9,A-Z]+\\})'
```

LISTING 131: special-align.tex using Listing 130

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path (A) edge node {0,1,L} (B)
         edge node {1,1,R} (C)
        (B) edge [loop above] node {1,1,L} (B)
         edge node {0,1,L} (C)
        (C) edge node {0,1,L} (D)
         edge [bend left] node {1,0,R} (E)
        (D) edge [loop below] node {1,1,R} (D)
         edge node {0,1,R} (A)
        (E) edge [bend left] node {1,0,R} (A);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

U: 2021-06-19

The lookForThis field can be considered optional; by default, it is assumed to be 1, which is demonstrated in Listing 130.

`indentAfterHeadings: {fields}`

This field enables the user to specify indentation rules that take effect after heading commands such as `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection*`, or indeed any user-specified command written in this field.⁵

LISTING 132: indentAfterHeadings

```
268 indentAfterHeadings:
269   part:
270     indentAfterThisHeading: 0
271     level: 1
272   chapter:
273     indentAfterThisHeading: 0
274     level: 2
275   section:
276     indentAfterThisHeading: 0
277     level: 3
```

The default settings do *not* place indentation after a heading, but you can easily switch them on by changing `indentAfterThisHeading` from 0 to 1. The `level` field tells `latexindent.pl` the hierarchy of the heading structure in your document. You might, for example, like to have both section and subsection set with `level: 3` because you do not want the indentation to go too deep.

You can add any of your own custom heading commands to this field, specifying the `level` as appropriate. You can also specify your own indentation in `indentRules` (see Section 5.8 on page 44); you will find the default `indentRules` contains `chapter: " "` which tells `latexindent.pl` simply to use a space character after chapter headings (once `indent` is set to 1 for chapter).

For example, assuming that you have the code in Listing 133 saved into `headings1.yaml`, and that you have the text from Listing 134 saved into `headings1.tex`.

⁵There is a slight difference in interface for this field when comparing Version 2.2 to Version 3.0; see appendix H on page 147 for details.



LISTING 133: headings1.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  subsection:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 2
```

LISTING 134: headings1.tex

```
\subsection{subsection title}
subsection text
subsection text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

If you run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings1.tex -l=headings1.yaml
```

then you should receive the output given in Listing 135.

LISTING 135: headings1.tex using Listing 133

```
\subsection{subsection title}
__subsection text
__subsection text
__\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text
__\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text
```

LISTING 136: headings1.tex second modification

```
\subsection{subsection title}
__subsection text
__subsection text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text
```

Now say that you modify the YAML from Listing 133 so that the paragraph level is 1; after running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings1.tex -l=headings1.yaml
```

you should receive the code given in Listing 136; notice that the paragraph and subsection are at the same indentation level.

`maximumIndentation:` *<horizontal space>*

N: 2017-08-21

You can control the maximum indentation given to your file by specifying the `maximumIndentation` field as horizontal space (but *not* including tabs). This feature uses the `Text::Tabs` module [29], and is *off* by default.

For example, consider the example shown in Listing 137 together with the default output shown in Listing 138.



LISTING 137: mult-nested.tex

```
\begin{one}
one
\begin{two}
two
\begin{three}
three
\begin{four}
four
\end{four}
\end{three}
\end{two}
\end{one}
```

LISTING 138: mult-nested.tex
default output

```
\begin{one}
__one
__\begin{two}
____two
____\begin{three}
____three
____\begin{four}
____four
____\end{four}
____\end{three}
____\end{two}
__\end{one}
```

Now say that, for example, you have the `max-indentation1.yaml` from Listing 139 and that you run the following command:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mult-nested.tex -l=max-indentation1
```

You should receive the output shown in Listing 140.

LISTING 139: max-indentation1.yaml

```
maximumIndentation: " "
```

LISTING 140: mult-nested.tex using
Listing 139

```
\begin{one}
  one
  \begin{two}
    two
    \begin{three}
      three
      \begin{four}
        four
        \end{four}
      \end{three}
    \end{two}
  \end{one}
```

Comparing the output in Listings 138 and 140 we notice that the (default) tabs of indentation have been replaced by a single space.

In general, when using the `maximumIndentation` feature, any leading tabs will be replaced by equivalent spaces except, of course, those found in `verbatimEnvironments` (see Listing 18 on page 22) or `noIndentBlock` (see Listing 24 on page 23).

5.7 The code blocks known latexindent.pl

As of Version 3.0, `latexindent.pl` processes documents using code blocks; each of these are shown in Table 2.

We will refer to these code blocks in what follows. Note that the fine tuning of the definition of the code blocks detailed in Table 2 is discussed in Section 9 on page 127.

5.8 noAdditionalIndent and indentRules

`latexindent.pl` operates on files by looking for code blocks, as detailed in Section 5.7; for each type of code block in Table 2 on the next page (which we will call a *thing* in what follows) it searches YAML fields for information in the following order:

1. `noAdditionalIndent` for the *name* of the current *thing*;
2. `indentRules` for the *name* of the current *thing*;
3. `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` for the *type* of the current *thing*;

TABLE 2: Code blocks known to `latexindent.pl`

Code block	characters allowed in name	example
environments	<code>a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\</code>	<code>\begin{myenv}</code> body of myenv <code>\end{myenv}</code>
optionalArguments	<i>inherits</i> name from parent (e.g environment name)	<code>[</code> opt arg text <code>]</code>
mandatoryArguments	<i>inherits</i> name from parent (e.g environment name)	<code>{</code> mand arg text <code>}</code>
commands	<code>+a-zA-Z@*0-9_:</code>	<code>\mycommand<arguments></code>
keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets	<code>a-zA-Z@*0-9_/. \h\{\}:\#-</code>	<code>my key/.style=<arguments></code>
namedGroupingBracesBrackets	<code>0-9\ .a-zA-Z@* ><</code>	<code>in<arguments></code>
UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets	<i>No name!</i>	<code>{</code> or <code>[</code> or <code>,</code> or <code>\&</code> or <code>)</code> or <code>(</code> or <code>\$</code> followed by <code><arguments></code>
ifElseFi	<code>@a-zA-Z</code> but must begin with either <code>\if</code> of <code>\@if</code>	<code>\ifnum ...</code> <code>...</code> <code>\else</code> <code>...</code> <code>\fi</code>
items	User specified, see Listings 108 and 111 on page 38	<code>\begin{enumerate}</code> <code>\item ...</code> <code>\end{enumerate}</code>
specialBeginEnd	User specified, see Listing 112 on page 38	<code>\[</code> <code>...</code> <code>\]</code>
afterHeading	User specified, see Listing 132 on page 42	<code>\chapter{title}</code> <code>...</code> <code>\section{title}</code>
filecontents	User specified, see Listing 34 on page 25	<code>\begin{filecontents}</code> <code>...</code> <code>\end{filecontents}</code>



4. indentRulesGlobal for the *type* of the current *(thing)*.

Using the above list, the first piece of information to be found will be used; failing that, the value of `defaultIndent` is used. If information is found in multiple fields, the first one according to the list above will be used; for example, if information is present in both `indentRules` and in `noAdditionalIndentGlobal`, then the information from `indentRules` takes priority.

We now present details for the different type of code blocks known to `latexindent.pl`, as detailed in Table 2 on the preceding page; for reference, there follows a list of the code blocks covered.

5.8.1	Environments and their arguments	46
5.8.2	Environments with items	52
5.8.3	Commands with arguments	53
5.8.4	ifelsefi code blocks	55
5.8.5	specialBeginEnd code blocks	57
5.8.6	afterHeading code blocks	58
5.8.7	The remaining code blocks	59
5.8.7.1	keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets	59
5.8.7.2	namedGroupingBracesBrackets	60
5.8.7.3	UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets	60
5.8.7.4	filecontents	61
5.8.8	Summary	61

5.8.1 Environments and their arguments

There are a few different YAML switches governing the indentation of environments; let's start with the code shown in Listing 141.

LISTING 141: `myenv.tex`

```
\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}
  body of environment
body of environment
  body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

`noAdditionalIndent:` *(fields)*

If we do not wish `myenv` to receive any additional indentation, we have a few choices available to us, as demonstrated in Listings 142 and 143.

LISTING 142:
`myenv-noAdd1.yaml`

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv: 1
```

LISTING 143:
`myenv-noAdd2.yaml`

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 1
```

On applying either of the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd2.yaml
```



we obtain the output given in Listing 144; note in particular that the environment `myenv` has not received any *additional* indentation, but that the outer environment *has* still received indentation.

LISTING 144: `myenv.tex` output (using either Listing 142 or Listing 143)

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

Upon changing the YAML files to those shown in Listings 145 and 146, and running either

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd4.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 147.

LISTING 145:
`myenv-noAdd3.yaml`

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv: 0
```

LISTING 146:
`myenv-noAdd4.yaml`

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 0
```

LISTING 147: `myenv.tex` output (using either Listing 145 or Listing 146)

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

Let's now allow `myenv` to have some optional and mandatory arguments, as in Listing 148.

LISTING 148: `myenv-args.tex`

```
\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}[%
  optional argument text
  optional argument text]%
  { mandatory argument text
  mandatory argument text}
  body of environment
body of environment
  body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

Upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myenv-noAdd1.yaml myenv-args.tex
```

we obtain the output shown in Listing 149; note that the optional argument, mandatory argument and body *all* have received no additional indent. This is because, when `noAdditionalIndent` is specified in 'scalar' form (as in Listing 142), then *all* parts of the environment (body, optional and mandatory arguments) are assumed to want no additional indent.



LISTING 149: myenv-args.tex using Listing 142

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

We may customise noAdditionalIndent for optional and mandatory arguments of the myenv environment, as shown in, for example, Listings 150 and 151.

LISTING 150:
myenv-noAdd5.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 1
    mandatoryArguments: 0
```

LISTING 151:
myenv-noAdd6.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 1
```

Upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd6.yaml
```

we obtain the respective outputs given in Listings 152 and 153. Note that in Listing 152 the text for the *optional* argument has not received any additional indentation, and that in Listing 153 the *mandatory* argument has not received any additional indentation; in both cases, the *body* has not received any additional indentation.

LISTING 152: myenv-args.tex using
Listing 150

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 153: myenv-args.tex using
Listing 151

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

```
indentRules: {fields}
```

We may also specify indentation rules for environment code blocks using the indentRules field; see, for example, Listings 154 and 155.

LISTING 154: myenv-rules1.yaml

```
indentRules:
  myenv: "  "
```

LISTING 155: myenv-rules2.yaml

```
indentRules:
  myenv:
    body: "  "
```




On applying either of the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-rules1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-rules2.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 156; note in particular that the environment `myenv` has received one tab (from the outer environment) plus three spaces from Listing 154 or 155.

LISTING 156: `myenv.tex` output (using either Listing 154 or Listing 155)

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

If you specify a field in `indentRules` using anything other than horizontal space, it will be ignored.

Returning to the example in Listing 148 that contains optional and mandatory arguments. Upon using Listing 154 as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l=myenv-rules1.yaml
```

we obtain the output in Listing 157; note that the body, optional argument and mandatory argument of `myenv` have *all* received the same customised indentation.

LISTING 157: `myenv-args.tex` using Listing 154

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    \optionalargumenttext
    \optionalargumenttext]%
    \mandatoryargumenttext
    \mandatoryargumenttext}
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

You can specify different indentation rules for the different features using, for example, Listings 158 and 159

LISTING 158: `myenv-rules3.yaml`

```
indentRules:
  myenv:
    body: "  "
    optionalArguments: "  "
```

LISTING 159: `myenv-rules4.yaml`

```
indentRules:
  myenv:
    body: "  "
    mandatoryArguments: "\t\t"
```

After running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules4.yaml
```

then we obtain the respective outputs given in Listings 160 and 161.



LISTING 160: myenv-args.tex using
Listing 158

```
\begin{outer}
—\begin{myenv}[%
—optional_argument_text
—optional_argument_text]%
—{mandatory_argument_text
—mandatory_argument_text}
—body_of_environment
—body_of_environment
—body_of_environment
—\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 161: myenv-args.tex using
Listing 159

```
\begin{outer}
—\begin{myenv}[%
—optional_argument_text
—optional_argument_text]%
—{mandatory_argument_text
—mandatory_argument_text}
—body_of_environment
—body_of_environment
—body_of_environment
—\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

Note that in Listing 160, the optional argument has only received a single space of indentation, while the mandatory argument has received the default (tab) indentation; the environment body has received three spaces of indentation.

In Listing 161, the optional argument has received the default (tab) indentation, the mandatory argument has received two tabs of indentation, and the body has received three spaces of indentation.

`noAdditionalIndentGlobal: <fields>`

Assuming that your environment name is not found within neither `noAdditionalIndent` nor `indentRules`, the next place that `latexindent.pl` will look is `noAdditionalIndentGlobal`, and in particular for the *environments* key (see Listing 162).

LISTING 162: noAdditionalIndentGlobal

```
326 noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
327 environments: 0
```

Let's say that you change the value of `environments` to 1 in Listing 162, and that you run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l env-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules1.yaml,env-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml
```

The respective output from these two commands are in Listings 163 and 164; in Listing 163 notice that *both* environments receive no additional indentation but that the arguments of `myenv` still *do* receive indentation. In Listing 164 notice that the *outer* environment does not receive additional indentation, but because of the settings from `myenv-rules1.yaml` (in Listing 154 on page 48), the `myenv` environment still *does* receive indentation.

LISTING 163: myenv-args.tex using
Listing 162

```
\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}[%
  optional argument text
  optional argument text]%
{ mandatory argument text
  mandatory argument text}
body of environment
body of environment
body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 164: myenv-args.tex using
Listings 154 and 162

```
\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}[%
  optional argument text
  optional argument text]%
{ mandatory argument text
  mandatory argument text}
body of environment
body of environment
body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

In fact, `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` also contains keys that control the indentation of optional and mandatory arguments; on referencing Listings 165 and 166



LISTING 165:
opt-args-no-add-glob.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  optionalArguments: 1
```

LISTING 166:
mand-args-no-add-glob.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  mandatoryArguments: 1
```

we may run the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local opt-args-no-add-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local mand-args-no-add-glob.yaml
```

which produces the respective outputs given in Listings 167 and 168. Notice that in Listing 167 the *optional* argument has not received any additional indentation, and in Listing 168 the *mandatory* argument has not received any additional indentation.

LISTING 167: myenv-args.tex using
Listing 165

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 168: myenv-args.tex using
Listing 166

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

```
indentRulesGlobal: {fields}
```

The final check that `latexindent.pl` will make is to look for `indentRulesGlobal` as detailed in Listing 169.

LISTING 169: indentRulesGlobal

```
342 indentRulesGlobal:
343   environments: 0
```

If you change the `environments` field to anything involving horizontal space, say " ", and then run the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l env-indentRules.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules1.yaml,env-indentRules.yaml
```

then the respective output is shown in Listings 170 and 171. Note that in Listing 170, both the environment blocks have received a single-space indentation, whereas in Listing 171 the outer environment has received single-space indentation (specified by `indentRulesGlobal`), but `myenv` has received " ", as specified by the particular `indentRules` for `myenv` Listing 154 on page 48.



LISTING 170: myenv-args.tex using Listing 169

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    {mandatory argument text
    mandatory argument text}
  body of environment
  body of environment
  body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 171: myenv-args.tex using Listings 154 and 169

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    {mandatory argument text
    mandatory argument text}
  body of environment
  body of environment
  body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

You can specify `indentRulesGlobal` for both optional and mandatory arguments, as detailed in Listings 172 and 173

LISTING 172:

opt-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  optionalArguments: "\t\t"
```

LISTING 173:

mand-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  mandatoryArguments: "\t\t"
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local opt-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local mand-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml
```

we obtain the respective outputs in Listings 174 and 175. Note that the *optional* argument in Listing 174 has received two tabs worth of indentation, while the *mandatory* argument has done so in Listing 175.

LISTING 174: myenv-args.tex using Listing 172

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    {mandatory argument text
    mandatory argument text}
  body of environment
  body of environment
  body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 175: myenv-args.tex using Listing 173

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    {mandatory argument text
    mandatory argument text}
  body of environment
  body of environment
  body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

5.8.2 Environments with items

With reference to Listings 108 and 111 on page 38, some commands may contain `item` commands; for the purposes of this discussion, we will use the code from Listing 109 on page 38.

Assuming that you've populated `itemNames` with the name of your `item`, you can put the item name into `noAdditionalIndent` as in Listing 176, although a more efficient approach may be to change the relevant field in `itemNames` to 0. Similarly, you can customise the indentation that your `item` receives using `indentRules`, as in Listing 177

LISTING 176: item-noAdd1.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  item: 1
# itemNames:
#   item: 0
```

LISTING 177: item-rules1.yaml

```
indentRules:
  item: " "
```



Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local item-noAdd1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local item-rules1.yaml
```

the respective outputs are given in Listings 178 and 179; note that in Listing 178 that the text after each item has not received any additional indentation, and in Listing 179, the text after each item has received a single space of indentation, specified by Listing 177.

LISTING 178: items1.tex using Listing 176

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item some text here
    some more text here
    some more text here
  \item another item
    some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

LISTING 179: items1.tex using Listing 177

```
\begin{itemize}
  — \item some text here
    — some more text here
    — some more text here
  — \item another item
    — some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

Alternatively, you might like to populate `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` or `indentRulesGlobal` using the `items` key, as demonstrated in Listings 180 and 181. Note that there is a need to ‘reset/remove’ the `item` field from `indentRules` in both cases (see the hierarchy description given on page 44) as the `item` command is a member of `indentRules` by default.

LISTING 180:
items-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml

```
indentRules:
  item: 0
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  items: 1
```

LISTING 181:
items-indentRulesGlobal.yaml

```
indentRules:
  item: 0
indentRulesGlobal:
  items: " "
```

Upon running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local items-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local items-indentRulesGlobal.yaml
```

the respective outputs from Listings 178 and 179 are obtained; note, however, that *all* such item commands without their own individual `noAdditionalIndent` or `indentRules` settings would behave as in these listings.

5.8.3 Commands with arguments

Let’s begin with the simple example in Listing 182; when `latexindent.pl` operates on this file, the default output is shown in Listing 183.⁶

LISTING 182: mycommand.tex

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 183: mycommand.tex default output

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

As in the environment-based case (see Listings 142 and 143 on page 46) we may specify `noAdditionalIndent` either in ‘scalar’ form, or in ‘field’ form, as shown in Listings 184 and 185

⁶The command code blocks have quite a few subtleties, described in Section 5.9 on page 61.



LISTING 184:
mycommand-noAdd1.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand: 1
```

LISTING 185:
mycommand-noAdd2.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 1
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd2.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 186 and 187

LISTING 186: mycommand.tex using
Listing 184

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 187: mycommand.tex using
Listing 185

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

Note that in Listing 186 that the ‘body’, optional argument *and* mandatory argument have *all* received no additional indentation, while in Listing 187, only the ‘body’ has not received any additional indentation. We define the ‘body’ of a command as any lines following the command name that include its optional or mandatory arguments.

We may further customise noAdditionalIndent for mycommand as we did in Listings 150 and 151 on page 48; explicit examples are given in Listings 188 and 189.

LISTING 188:
mycommand-noAdd3.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 1
    mandatoryArguments: 0
```

LISTING 189:
mycommand-noAdd4.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 1
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd4.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 190 and 191.

LISTING 190: mycommand.tex using
Listing 188

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 191: mycommand.tex using
Listing 189

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```



Attentive readers will note that the body of `mycommand` in both Listings 190 and 191 has received no additional indent, even though `body` is explicitly set to 0 in both Listings 188 and 189. This is because, by default, `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` for commands is set to 1 by default; this can be easily fixed as in Listings 192 and 193.

LISTING 192:
mycommand-noAdd5.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 1
    mandatoryArguments: 0
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  commands: 0
```

LISTING 193:
mycommand-noAdd6.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 1
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  commands: 0
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd6.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 194 and 195.

LISTING 194: mycommand.tex using Listing 192

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 195: mycommand.tex using Listing 193

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

Both `indentRules` and `indentRulesGlobal` can be adjusted as they were for *environment* code blocks, as in Listings 158 and 159 on page 49 and Listings 169, 172 and 173 on pages 51–52.

5.8.4 ifelsefi code blocks

Let's use the simple example shown in Listing 196; when `latexindent.pl` operates on this file, the output as in Listing 197; note that the body of each of the `\if` statements have been indented, and that the `\else` statement has been accounted for correctly.

LISTING 196: ifelsefi1.tex

```
\ifodd\radius
\ifnum\radius<14
\pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
\else
\pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
\fi\fi
```

LISTING 197: ifelsefi1.tex default output

```
\ifodd\radius
  \ifnum\radius<14
    \pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
  \else
    \pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
  \fi\fi
```

It is recommended to specify `noAdditionalIndent` and `indentRules` in the 'scalar' form only for these type of code blocks, although the 'field' form would work, assuming that `body` was specified. Examples are shown in Listings 198 and 199.

LISTING 198:
ifnum-noAdd.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  ifnum: 1
```

LISTING 199:
ifnum-indent-rules.yaml

```
indentRules:
  ifnum: " "
```

After running the following commands,



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -local ifnum-noAdd.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -l ifnum-indent-rules.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 200 and 201; note that in Listing 200, the ifnum code block has *not* received any additional indentation, while in Listing 201, the ifnum code block has received one tab and two spaces of indentation.

LISTING 200: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 198

```
\ifodd\radius
  \ifnum\radius<14
    \pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
  \else
    \pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
  \fi\fi
```

LISTING 201: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 199

```
\ifodd\radius
  \ifnum\radius<14
    \pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
  \else
    \pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
  \fi\fi
```

We may specify noAdditionalIndentGlobal and indentRulesGlobal as in Listings 202 and 203.

LISTING 202:
ifelsefi-noAdd-glob.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  ifElseFi: 1
```

LISTING 203:
ifelsefi-indent-rules-global.yaml

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  ifElseFi: " "
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -local ifelsefi-noAdd-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -l ifelsefi-indent-rules-global.yaml
```

we receive the outputs in Listings 204 and 205; notice that in Listing 204 neither of the ifelsefi code blocks have received indentation, while in Listing 205 both code blocks have received a single space of indentation.

LISTING 204: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 202

```
\ifodd\radius
\ifnum\radius<14
\pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
\else
\pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
\fi\fi
```

LISTING 205: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 203

```
\ifodd\radius
 \ifnum\radius<14
  \pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
 \else
  \pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
 \fi\fi
```

U: 2018-04-27

We can further explore the treatment of ifElseFi code blocks in Listing 206, and the associated default output given in Listing 207; note, in particular, that the bodies of each of the ‘or statements’ have been indented.

LISTING 206: ifelsefi2.tex

```
\ifcase#1
zero%
\or
one%
\or
two%
\or
three%
\else
default
\fi
```

LISTING 207: ifelsefi2.tex default output

```
\ifcase#1
  zero%
\or
  one%
\or
  two%
\or
  three%
\else
  default
\fi
```




5.8.5 specialBeginEnd code blocks

Let's use the example from Listing 113 on page 39 which has default output shown in Listing 114 on page 39.

It is recommended to specify `noAdditionalIndent` and `indentRules` in the 'scalar' form for these type of code blocks, although the 'field' form would work, assuming that body was specified. Examples are shown in Listings 208 and 209.

LISTING 208:
`displayMath-noAdd.yaml`

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  displayMath: 1
```

LISTING 209:
`displayMath-indent-rules.yaml`

```
indentRules:
  displayMath: "\t\t\t"
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -local displayMath-noAdd.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -l displayMath-indent-rules.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 210 and 211; note that in Listing 210, the `displayMath` code block has *not* received any additional indentation, while in Listing 211, the `displayMath` code block has received three tabs worth of indentation.

LISTING 210: `special1.tex` using
Listing 208

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
  g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

LISTING 211: `special1.tex` using
Listing 209

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
      f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
    g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

We may specify `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` and `indentRulesGlobal` as in Listings 212 and 213.

LISTING 212:
`special-noAdd-glob.yaml`

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  specialBeginEnd: 1
```

LISTING 213:
`special-indent-rules-global.yaml`

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  specialBeginEnd: " "
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -local special-noAdd-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -l special-indent-rules-global.yaml
```

we receive the outputs in Listings 214 and 215; notice that in Listing 214 neither of the `special` code blocks have received indentation, while in Listing 215 both code blocks have received a single space of indentation.

LISTING 214: `special1.tex` using
Listing 212

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

LISTING 215: `special1.tex` using
Listing 213

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
 f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
 g(x)=f(2x)
$
```



5.8.6 afterHeading code blocks

Let's use the example Listing 216 for demonstration throughout this Section. As discussed on page 43, by default `latexindent.pl` will not add indentation after headings.

LISTING 216: headings2.tex

```
\paragraph{paragraph
title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

On using the YAML file in Listing 218 by running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings2.tex -l headings3.yaml
```

we obtain the output in Listing 217. Note that the argument of `paragraph` has received (default) indentation, and that the body after the heading statement has received (default) indentation.

LISTING 217: headings2.tex using Listing 218

```
\paragraph{paragraph
          title}
      paragraph text
      paragraph text
```

LISTING 218: headings3.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
```

If we specify `noAdditionalIndent` as in Listing 220 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings2.tex -l headings4.yaml
```

then we receive the output in Listing 219. Note that the arguments *and* the body after the heading of `paragraph` has received no additional indentation, because we have specified `noAdditionalIndent` in scalar form.

LISTING 219: headings2.tex using Listing 220

```
\paragraph{paragraph
title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

LISTING 220: headings4.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
noAdditionalIndent:
  paragraph: 1
```

Similarly, if we specify `indentRules` as in Listing 222 and run analogous commands to those above, we receive the output in Listing 221; note that the *body*, *mandatory argument* and content *after the heading* of `paragraph` have *all* received three tabs worth of indentation.

LISTING 221: headings2.tex using Listing 222

```
\paragraph{paragraph
_____title}
_____paragraph text
_____paragraph text
```

LISTING 222: headings5.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
indentRules:
  paragraph: "\t\t\t"
```

We may, instead, specify `noAdditionalIndent` in 'field' form, as in Listing 224 which gives the output in Listing 223.



LISTING 223: headings2.tex using
Listing 224

```
\paragraph{paragraph
  title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

LISTING 224: headings6.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
noAdditionalIndent:
  paragraph:
    body: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 0
    afterHeading: 1
```

Analogously, we may specify `indentRules` as in Listing 226 which gives the output in Listing 225; note that mandatory argument text has only received a single space of indentation, while the body after the heading has received three tabs worth of indentation.

LISTING 225: headings2.tex using
Listing 226

```
\paragraph{paragraph
_____ title}
_____paragraph text
_____paragraph text
```

LISTING 226: headings7.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
indentRules:
  paragraph:
    mandatoryArguments: " "
    afterHeading: "\t\t\t"
```

Finally, let's consider `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` and `indentRulesGlobal` shown in Listings 228 and 230 respectively, with respective output in Listings 227 and 229. Note that in Listing 228 the *mandatory argument* of `paragraph` has received a (default) tab's worth of indentation, while the body after the heading has received *no additional indentation*. Similarly, in Listing 229, the *argument* has received both a (default) tab plus two spaces of indentation (from the global rule specified in Listing 230), and the remaining body after `paragraph` has received just two spaces of indentation.

LISTING 227: headings2.tex using
Listing 228

```
\paragraph{paragraph
  title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

LISTING 228: headings8.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  afterHeading: 1
```

LISTING 229: headings2.tex using
Listing 230

```
\paragraph{paragraph
__\title}
__\paragraph\text
__\paragraph\text
```

LISTING 230: headings9.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
indentRulesGlobal:
  afterHeading: " "
```

5.8.7 The remaining code blocks

Referencing the different types of code blocks in Table 2 on page 45, we have a few code blocks yet to cover; these are very similar to the commands code block type covered comprehensively in Section 5.8.3 on page 53, but a small discussion defining these remaining code blocks is necessary.

5.8.7.1 keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets

`latexindent.pl` defines this type of code block by the following criteria:

- it must immediately follow either `{` OR `[` OR `,` with comments and blank lines allowed.
- then it has a name made up of the characters detailed in Table 2 on page 45;



- then an = symbol;
- then at least one set of curly braces or square brackets (comments and line breaks allowed throughout).

See the `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: follow` and `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: name` fields of the fine tuning section in Listing 521 on page 127

An example is shown in Listing 231, with the default output given in Listing 232.

LISTING 231: pgfkeys1.tex

```
\pgfkeys{/tikz/.cd,
start coordinate/.initial={0,
\vertfactor},
}
```

LISTING 232: pgfkeys1.tex default output

```
\pgfkeys{/tikz/.cd,
__start coordinate/.initial={0,
____\vertfactor},
}
```

In Listing 232, note that the maximum indentation is three tabs, and these come from:

- the `\pgfkeys` command's mandatory argument;
- the `start coordinate/.initial` key's mandatory argument;
- the `start coordinate/.initial` key's body, which is defined as any lines following the name of the key that include its arguments. This is the part controlled by the `body` field for `noAdditionalIndent` and friends from page 44.

5.8.7.2 namedGroupingBracesBrackets

This type of code block is mostly motivated by tikz-based code; we define this code block as follows:

- it must immediately follow either *horizontal space* OR *one or more line breaks* OR `{` OR `[` OR `$` OR `)` OR `(`
- the name may contain the characters detailed in Table 2 on page 45;
- then at least one set of curly braces or square brackets (comments and line breaks allowed throughout).

See the `NamedGroupingBracesBrackets: follow` and `NamedGroupingBracesBrackets: name` fields of the fine tuning section in Listing 521 on page 127

A simple example is given in Listing 233, with default output in Listing 234.

LISTING 233: child1.tex

```
\coordinate
child[grow=down]{
edge from parent [antiparticle]
node [above=3pt] {$C$}
}
```

LISTING 234: child1.tex default output

```
\coordinate
child[grow=down]{
____edge from parent [antiparticle]
____node [above=3pt] {$C$}
__}
```

In particular, `latexindent.pl` considers `child`, `parent` and `node` all to be `namedGroupingBracesBrackets`⁷. Referencing Listing 234, note that the maximum indentation is two tabs, and these come from:

- the `child`'s mandatory argument;
- the `child`'s body, which is defined as any lines following the name of the `namedGroupingBracesBrackets` that include its arguments. This is the part controlled by the `body` field for `noAdditionalIndent` and friends from page 44.

5.8.7.3 UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets

occur in a variety of situations; specifically, we define this type of code block as satisfying the following criteria:

- it must immediately follow either `{` OR `[` OR `,` OR `&` OR `)` OR `(` OR `$`;

⁷You may like to verify this by using the `-tt` option and checking `indent.log`!



- then at least one set of curly braces or square brackets (comments and line breaks allowed throughout).

See the `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets`: follow field of the fine tuning section in Listing 521 on page 127

N: 2019-07-13

An example is shown in Listing 235 with default output give in Listing 236.

LISTING 235: `psforeach1.tex`

```
\psforeach{\row}{%
{
{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
}
```

LISTING 236: `psforeach1.tex` default output

```
\psforeach{\row}{%
—{
———{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
—{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
}
```

Referencing Listing 236, there are *three* sets of unnamed braces. Note also that the maximum value of indentation is three tabs, and these come from:

- the `\psforeach` command's mandatory argument;
- the *first* un-named braces mandatory argument;
- the *first* un-named braces *body*, which we define as any lines following the first opening `{` or `[` that defined the code block. This is the part controlled by the *body* field for `noAdditionalIndent` and friends from page 44.

Users wishing to customise the mandatory and/or optional arguments on a *per-name* basis for the `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets` should use `always-un-named`.

5.8.7.4 filecontents

code blocks behave just as environments, except that neither arguments nor items are sought.

5.8.8 Summary

Having considered all of the different types of code blocks, the functions of the fields given in Listings 237 and 238 should now make sense.

LISTING 237: `noAdditionalIndentGlobal`

```
326 noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
327   environments: 0
328   commands: 1
329   optionalArguments: 0
330   mandatoryArguments: 0
331   ifElseFi: 0
332   items: 0
333   keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: 0
334   namedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
335   UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
336   specialBeginEnd: 0
337   afterHeading: 0
338   filecontents: 0
```

LISTING 238: `indentRulesGlobal`

```
342 indentRulesGlobal:
343   environments: 0
344   commands: 0
345   optionalArguments: 0
346   mandatoryArguments: 0
347   ifElseFi: 0
348   items: 0
349   keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: 0
350   namedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
351   UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
352   specialBeginEnd: 0
353   afterHeading: 0
354   filecontents: 0
```

5.9 Commands and the strings between their arguments

The command code blocks will always look for optional (square bracketed) and mandatory (curly braced) arguments which can contain comments, line breaks and 'beamer' commands `<.*?>` between them. There are switches that can allow them to contain other strings, which we discuss next.

`commandCodeBlocks`: `{fields}`

U: 2018-04-27

The `commandCodeBlocks` field contains a few switches detailed in Listing 239.



LISTING 239: commandCodeBlocks

```

357 commandCodeBlocks:
358   roundParenthesesAllowed: 1
359   stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
360   -
361     amalgamate: 1
362   - 'node'
363   - 'at'
364   - 'to'
365   - 'decoration'
366   - '\+\+'
367   - '\-\-'
368   - '\#\#\d'
369   commandNameSpecial:
370   -
371     amalgamate: 1
372   - '@ifnextchar\['
```

`roundParenthesesAllowed: 0|1`

The need for this field was mostly motivated by commands found in code used to generate images in PSTricks and tikz; for example, let's consider the code given in Listing 240.

LISTING 240: pstricks1.tex

```

\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
{(2+cos(u))*cos(v+\Pi)}
{(2+cos(u))*sin(v+\Pi)}
{sin(u)}
```

LISTING 241: pstricks1 default output

```

\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
{(2+cos(u))*cos(v+\Pi)}
{(2+cos(u))*sin(v+\Pi)}
{sin(u)}
```

Notice that the `\defFunction` command has an optional argument, followed by a mandatory argument, followed by a round-parenthesis argument, (u, v) .

By default, because `roundParenthesesAllowed` is set to 1 in Listing 239, then `latexindent.pl` will allow round parenthesis between optional and mandatory arguments. In the case of the code in Listing 240, `latexindent.pl` finds *all* the arguments of `defFunction`, both before and after (u, v) .

The default output from running `latexindent.pl` on Listing 240 actually leaves it unchanged (see Listing 241); note in particular, this is because of `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` as discussed on page 55.

Upon using the YAML settings in Listing 243, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl pstricks1.tex -l noRoundParentheses.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 242.

LISTING 242: pstricks1.tex using Listing 243

```

\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
{(2+cos(u))*cos(v+\Pi)}
  {(2+cos(u))*sin(v+\Pi)}
  {sin(u)}
```

LISTING 243: noRoundParentheses.yaml

```

commandCodeBlocks:
  roundParenthesesAllowed: 0
```

Notice the difference between Listing 241 and Listing 242; in particular, in Listing 242, because round parentheses are *not* allowed, `latexindent.pl` finds that the `\defFunction` command finishes at the first opening round parenthesis. As such, the remaining braced, mandatory, arguments are found to be `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets` (see Table 2 on page 45) which, by default, assume indentation for their body, and hence the tabbed indentation in Listing 242.

Let's explore this using the YAML given in Listing 245 and run the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl pstricks1.tex -l defFunction.yaml
```

then the output is as in Listing 244.

LISTING 244: pstricks1.tex using Listing 245

```
\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
  \{(2+\cos(u))*\cos(v+\Pi)\}
  \{(2+\cos(u))*\sin(v+\Pi)\}
  \{\sin(u)\}
```

LISTING 245: defFunction.yaml

```
indentRules:
  defFunction:
    body: " "
```

Notice in Listing 244 that the *body* of the `defFunction` command i.e., the subsequent lines containing arguments after the command name, have received the single space of indentation specified by Listing 245.

`stringsAllowedBetweenArguments: {fields}`

`tikz` users may well specify code such as that given in Listing 246; processing this code using `latexindent.pl` gives the default output in Listing 247.

LISTING 246: tikz-node1.tex

```
\draw[thin]
(c) to[in=110,out=-90]
++(0,-0.5cm)
node[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

LISTING 247: tikz-node1 default output

```
\draw[thin]
(c) to[in=110,out=-90]
++(0,-0.5cm)
node[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

With reference to Listing 239 on the previous page, we see that the strings

to, node, ++

are all allowed to appear between arguments; importantly, you are encouraged to add further names to this field as necessary. This means that when `latexindent.pl` processes Listing 246, it consumes:

- the optional argument `[thin]`
- the round-bracketed argument `(c)` because `roundParenthesesAllowed` is 1 by default
- the string `to` (specified in `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`)
- the optional argument `[in=110,out=-90]`
- the string `++` (specified in `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`)
- the round-bracketed argument `(0,-0.5cm)` because `roundParenthesesAllowed` is 1 by default
- the string `node` (specified in `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`)
- the optional argument `[below,align=left,scale=0.5]`

We can explore this further, for example using Listing 249 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tikz-node1.tex -l draw.yaml
```

we receive the output given in Listing 248.



LISTING 248: tikz-node1.tex using Listing 249

```
\draw[thin]
  \c(c) to[in=110,out=-90]
  \c++(0,-0.5cm)
  \cnode[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

Notice that each line after the `\draw` command (its ‘body’) in Listing 248 has been given the appropriate two-spaces worth of indentation specified in Listing 249.

Let’s compare this with the output from using the YAML settings in Listing 251, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tikz-node1.tex -l no-strings.yaml
```

given in Listing 250.

LISTING 250: tikz-node1.tex using Listing 251

```
\draw[thin]
(c) to[in=110,out=-90]
++(0,-0.5cm)
node[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

LISTING 249: draw.yaml

```
indentRules:
  draw:
    body: " "
```

LISTING 251: no-strings.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    0
```

In this case, `latexindent.pl` sees that:

- the `\draw` command finishes after the `(c)`, as `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments` has been set to 0 so there are no strings allowed between arguments;
- it finds a `namedGroupingBracesBrackets` called `to` (see Table 2 on page 45) with argument `[in=110,out=-90]`
- it finds another `namedGroupingBracesBrackets` but this time called `node` with argument `[below,align=left,scale=0.5]`

U: 2018-04-27

Referencing Listing 239 on page 62,, we see that the first field in the `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments` is `amalgamate` and is set to 1 by default. This is for users who wish to specify their settings in multiple YAML files. For example, by using the settings in either Listing 252 or Listing 253 is equivalent to using the settings in Listing 254.

LISTING 252: amalgamate-demo.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    - 'more'
    - 'strings'
    - 'here'
```

LISTING 253: amalgamate-demo1.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 1
    - 'more'
    - 'strings'
    - 'here'
```

LISTING 254: amalgamate-demo2.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 1
    - 'node'
    - 'at'
    - 'to'
    - 'decoration'
    - '\+\'
    - '\-\'
    - 'more'
    - 'strings'
    - 'here'
```

We specify `amalgamate` to be set to 0 and in which case any settings loaded prior to those specified, including the default, will be overwritten. For example, using the settings in Listing 255 means that only the strings specified in that field will be used.



LISTING 255: amalgamate-demo3.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:
  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 0
    - 'further'
    - 'settings'
```

It is important to note that the `amalgamate` field, if used, must be in the first field, and specified using the syntax given in Listings 253 to 255.

We may explore this feature further with the code in Listing 256, whose default output is given in Listing 257.

LISTING 256: for-each.tex

```
\foreach \x/\y in {0/1,1/2}{
  body of foreach
}
```

LISTING 257: for-each default output

```
\foreach \x/\y in {0/1,1/2}{
  body of foreach
}
```

Let's compare this with the output from using the YAML settings in Listing 259, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl for-each.tex -l foreach.yaml
```

given in Listing 258.

LISTING 258: for-each.tex using Listing 259

```
\foreach \x/\y in {0/1,1/2}{
  body of foreach
}
```

LISTING 259: foreach.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:
  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 0
    - '\\x\\/\\y'
    - 'in'
```

You might like to compare the output given in Listing 257 and Listing 258. Note, in particular, in Listing 257 that the `foreach` command has not included any of the subsequent strings, and that the braces have been treated as a `namedGroupingBracesBrackets`. In Listing 258 the `foreach` command has been allowed to have `\x/\y` and `in` between arguments because of the settings given in Listing 259.

`commandNameSpecial`: *<fields>*

U: 2018-04-27

There are some special command names that do not fit within the names recognised by `latexindent.pl`, the first one of which is `\@ifnextchar[`. From the perspective of `latexindent.pl`, the whole of the text `\@ifnextchar[` is a command, because it is immediately followed by sets of mandatory arguments. However, without the `commandNameSpecial` field, `latexindent.pl` would not be able to label it as such, because the `[` is, necessarily, not matched by a closing `]`.

For example, consider the sample file in Listing 260, which has default output in Listing 261.

LISTING 260: ifnextchar.tex

```
\parbox{
  \@ifnextchar[{arg 1}{arg 2}
}
```

LISTING 261: ifnextchar.tex default output

```
\parbox{
  \@ifnextchar[{arg 1}{arg 2}
}
```

Notice that in Listing 261 the `parbox` command has been able to indent its body, because `latexindent.pl` has successfully found the command `\@ifnextchar` first; the pattern-matching of `latexindent.pl` starts from the *inner most <thing> and works outwards*, discussed in more detail on page 110.



For demonstration, we can compare this output with that given in Listing 262 in which the settings from Listing 263 have dictated that no special command names, including the `\@ifnextchar[` command, should not be searched for specially; as such, the `parbox` command has been *unable* to indent its body successfully, because the `\@ifnextchar[` command has not been found.

LISTING 262: `ifnextchar.tex` using
Listing 263

```
\parbox{  
  \@ifnextchar[{arg 1}{arg 2}  
}
```

LISTING 263: `no-ifnextchar.yaml`

```
commandCodeBlocks:  
  commandNameSpecial: 0
```

The `amalgamate` field can be used for `commandNameSpecial`, just as for `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`. The same condition holds as stated previously, which we state again here:



Warning!

It is important to note that the `amalgamate` field, if used, in either `commandNameSpecial` or `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments` must be in the first field, and specified using the syntax given in Listings 253 to 255.

SECTION 6



The -m (modifylinebreaks) switch

All features described in this section will only be relevant if the `-m` switch is used.

6.1	Text Wrapping	68
6.1.1	Text wrap quick start	69
6.1.2	textWrapOptions: modifying line breaks by text wrapping	69
6.1.3	Text wrapping on a per-code-block basis	72
6.2	removeParagraphLineBreaks: modifying line breaks for paragraphs	77
6.3	Combining removeParagraphLineBreaks and textWrapOptions	83
6.3.1	text wrapping beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks	84
6.4	Summary of text wrapping	86
6.5	oneSentencePerLine: modifying line breaks for sentences	87
6.5.1	sentencesFollow	89
6.5.2	sentencesBeginWith	89
6.5.3	sentencesEndWith	90
6.5.4	Features of the oneSentencePerLine routine	92
6.5.5	Text wrapping and indenting sentences	93
6.6	Poly-switches	95
6.6.1	Poly-switches for environments	95
6.6.1.1	Adding line breaks: BeginStartsOnOwnLine and BodyStartsOnOwnLine	96
6.6.1.2	Adding line breaks using EndStartsOnOwnLine and EndFinishesWithLineBreak	98
6.6.1.3	poly-switches 1, 2, and 3 only add line breaks when necessary	99
6.6.1.4	Removing line breaks (poly-switches set to -1)	100
6.6.1.5	About trailing horizontal space	101
6.6.1.6	poly-switch line break removal and blank lines	102
6.6.2	Poly-switches for double back slash	103
6.6.2.1	Double back slash starts on own line	103
6.6.2.2	Double back slash finishes with line break	104
6.6.2.3	Double back slash poly-switches for specialBeginEnd	104
6.6.2.4	Double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments	105
6.6.2.5	Double back slash optional square brackets	106
6.6.3	Poly-switches for other code blocks	106
6.6.4	Partnering BodyStartsOnOwnLine with argument-based poly-switches	108



6.6.5	Conflicting poly-switches: sequential code blocks	109
6.6.6	Conflicting poly-switches: nested code blocks	110

`modifylinebreaks: {fields}`

As of Version 3.0, `latexindent.pl` has the `-m` switch, which permits `latexindent.pl` to modify line breaks, according to the specifications in the `modifyLineBreaks` field. *The settings in this field will only be considered if the `-m` switch has been used.* A snippet of the default settings of this field is shown in Listing 264.

LISTING 264: `modifyLineBreaks`

```
487 modifyLineBreaks:
488     preserveBlankLines: 1
489     condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto: 1
```

Having read the previous paragraph, it should sound reasonable that, if you call `latexindent.pl` using the `-m` switch, then you give it permission to modify line breaks in your file, but let's be clear:



Warning!

If you call `latexindent.pl` with the `-m` switch, then you are giving it permission to modify line breaks. By default, the only thing that will happen is that multiple blank lines will be condensed into one blank line; many other settings are possible, discussed next.

`preserveBlankLines: 0|1`

This field is directly related to *poly-switches*, discussed in Section 6.6. By default, it is set to 1, which means that blank lines will be *protected* from removal; however, regardless of this setting, multiple blank lines can be condensed if `condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto` is greater than 0, discussed next.

`condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto: {positive integer}`

Assuming that this switch takes an integer value greater than 0, `latexindent.pl` will condense multiple blank lines into the number of blank lines illustrated by this switch. As an example, Listing 265 shows a sample file with blank lines; upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -m -o+-mod1
```

the output is shown in Listing 266; note that the multiple blank lines have been condensed into one blank line, and note also that we have used the `-m` switch!

LISTING 265: `mlb1.tex`

```
before blank line

after blank line

after blank line
```

LISTING 266: `mlb1-mod1.tex`

```
before blank line

after blank line

after blank line
```

6.1 Text Wrapping

There are *many* different configuration options for the text wrapping routine of `latexindent.pl`, perhaps *too* many. The following sections are comprehensive, but quite long; in an attempt to to be



brief, you might begin with the settings given in Section 6.1.1.

6.1.1 Text wrap quick start

Of all the available text wrapping options, I consider Listing 267 to be among the most helpful starting points.

LISTING 267: textwrap-qs.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 80                # number of columns
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1      # per-code-block wrap
    beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks: 1 # wrap *before* finding child code blocks
    mainDocument: 1           # apply to main document
    afterHeading: 1           # after headings
    items: 1                  # within items
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:  # remove line breaks within paragraphs
    mainDocument: 1
    afterHeading: 1
    items: 1
    beforeTextWrap: 1         # before wrapping text
```

You can read about `perCodeBlockBasis` in Section 6.1.3 and `removeParagraphLineBreaks` in Section 6.2.

If the settings in Listing 267 do not give your desired output, take a look at the demonstration in Section 6.3.1, in particular Listing 334.

6.1.2 textWrapOptions: modifying line breaks by text wrapping

N: 2017-05-27

When the `-m` switch is active `latexindent.pl` has the ability to wrap text using the options specified in the `textWrapOptions` field, see Listing 268.

LISTING 268: textWrapOptions

-m

```
514 textWrapOptions:
515 columns: 0
```

The value of `columns` specifies the column at which the text should be wrapped.

By default, the value of `columns` is 0, so `latexindent.pl` will *not* wrap text; if you change it to a value of 2 or more, then text will be wrapped after the character in the specified column.

By default, the text wrapping routine will operate *before* the code blocks have been searched for; text wrapping on a *per-code-block* basis is discussed in Section 6.1.3.

We consider the file give in Listing 269 for demonstration.

LISTING 269: textwrap1.tex

Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by `latexindent.pl`. Each line is quite long.

Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by `latexindent.pl`. Each line is quite long.

Using the file `textwrap1.yaml` in Listing 271, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap1.tex -o textwrap1-mod1.tex -l textwrap1.yaml
```

we obtain the output in Listing 270.



LISTING 270: textwrap1-mod1.tex

```
Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.
Each line is quite
long.
```

```
Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.
Each line is quite
long.
```

The text wrapping routine is performed *after* verbatim environments have been stored, so verbatim environments and verbatim commands are exempt from the routine. For example, using the file in Listing 272,

LISTING 272: textwrap2.tex

```
Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by latexindent.pl. Each line is quite long.
```

```
\begin{verbatim}
  a long line in a verbatim environment, which will not be broken by latexindent.pl
\end{verbatim}
```

```
Here is a verb command: \verb!this will not be text wrapped!
```

and running the following command and continuing to use textwrap1.yaml from Listing 271,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap2.tex -o textwrap2-mod1.tex -l textwrap1.yaml
```

then the output is as in Listing 273.

LISTING 273: textwrap2-mod1.tex

```
Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.
Each line is quite
long.
```

```
\begin{verbatim}
  a long line in a verbatim environment, which will not be broken by latexindent.pl
\end{verbatim}
```

```
Here is a verb
command:
\verb!this will not be text wrapped!
```

Furthermore, the text wrapping routine is performed after the trailing comments have been stored, and they are also exempt from text wrapping. For example, using the file in Listing 274

LISTING 274: textwrap3.tex

```
Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by latexindent.pl. Each line is quite long.
```

```
Here is a line % text wrapping does not apply to comments by latexindent.pl
```

and running the following command and continuing to use textwrap1.yaml from Listing 271,



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap3.tex -o textwrap3-mod1.tex -l textwrap1.yaml
```

then the output is as in Listing 275.

LISTING 275: textwrap3-mod1.tex

```
Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.
Each line is quite
long.
```

```
Here is a line
```

```
% text wrapping does not apply to comments by latexindent.pl
```

U: 2021-07-23

The default value of `huge` is `overflow`, which means that words will *not* be broken by the text wrapping routine, implemented by the `Text::Wrap` [30]. There are options to change the `huge` option for the `Text::Wrap` module to either `wrap` or `die`. Before modifying the value of `huge`, please bear in mind the following warning:



Warning!

Changing the value of `huge` to anything other than `overflow` will slow down `latexindent.pl` significantly when the `-m` switch is active.

Furthermore, changing `huge` means that you may have some words or *commands*(!) split across lines in your `.tex` file, which may affect your output. I do not recommend changing this field.

For example, using the settings in Listings 277 and 279 and running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap4.tex -o=+-mod2A -l textwrap2A.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap4.tex -o=+-mod2B -l textwrap2B.yaml
```

gives the respective output in Listings 276 and 278.

LISTING 276: textwrap4-mod2A.tex

```
He
re
is
a
li
ne
of
te
xt
.
```

LISTING 278: textwrap4-mod2B.tex

```
Here
is
a
line
of
text.
```

LISTING 277: textwrap2A.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
textWrapOptions:
  columns: 3
  huge: wrap
```

LISTING 279: textwrap2B.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
textWrapOptions:
  columns: 3
```

N: 2020-11-06

You can also specify the `tabstop` field as an integer value, which is passed to the text wrap module; see [30] for details. Starting with the code in Listing 280 with settings in Listing 281, and running the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap-ts.tex -o+=-mod1 -l tabstop.yaml
```

gives the code given in Listing 282.

LISTING 280: textwrap-ts.tex

```
x      y
```

LISTING 281: tabstop.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 80
    tabstop: 9
```

LISTING 282: textwrap-ts-mod1.tex

```
x      y
```

You can specify separator, break and unexpand options in your settings in analogous ways to those demonstrated in Listings 279 and 281, and they will be passed to the `Text::Wrap` module. I have not found a useful reason to do this; see [30] for more details.

6.1.3 Text wrapping on a per-code-block basis

U: 2018-08-13

By default, if the value of `columns` is greater than 0 and the `-m` switch is active, then the text wrapping routine will operate before the code blocks have been searched for. This behaviour is customisable; in particular, you can instead instruct `latexindent.pl` to apply `textWrap` on a per-code-block basis. Thanks to [37] for their help in testing and shaping this feature.

The full details of `textWrapOptions` are shown in Listing 283. In particular, note the field `perCodeBlockBasis`: 0.

LISTING 283: textWrapOptions

-m

```
514   textWrapOptions:
515     columns: 0
516     huge: overflow    # forbid mid-word line breaks
517     separator: ""
518     perCodeBlockBasis: 0
519     beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks: 0
520     all: 0
521     alignAtAmpersandTakesPriority: 1
522     environments:
523       quotation: 0
524     ifElseFi: 0
525     optionalArguments: 0
526     mandatoryArguments: 0
527     items: 0
528     specialBeginEnd: 0
529     afterHeading: 0
530     preamble: 0
531     filecontents: 0
532     mainDocument: 0
```

The code blocks detailed in Listing 283 are with direct reference to those detailed in Table 2 on page 45.

The only special case is the `mainDocument` field; this is designed for ‘chapter’-type files that may contain paragraphs that are not within any other code-blocks. The same notation is used between this feature and the `removeParagraphLineBreaks` described in Listing 302 on page 78; in fact, the two features can even be combined (this is detailed in Section 6.3 on page 83).

U: 2021-09-16

Note: `mainDocument` replaces `masterDocument` which was used in previous versions of `latexindent.pl`. The field `masterDocument` is still supported, but it is anticipated to be removed in a future version, so I recommend using `mainDocument` instead.

Let’s explore these switches with reference to the code given in Listing 284; the text outside of the environment is considered part of the `mainDocument`.



LISTING 284: textwrap5.tex

Before the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.

```
\begin{myenv}
Within the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}
```

After the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.

With reference to this code block, the settings given in Listings 285 to 287 each give the same output.

LISTING 285: textwrap3.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 30
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all: 1
```

LISTING 286: textwrap4.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 30
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    environments: 1
    mainDocument: 1
```

LISTING 287: textwrap5.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 30
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    environments:
      myenv: 1
    mainDocument: 1
```

Let's explore the similarities and differences in the equivalent (with respect to Listing 284) syntax specified in Listings 285 to 287:

- in each of Listings 285 to 287 notice that `columns: 30`;
- in each of Listings 285 to 287 notice that `perCodeBlockBasis: 1`;
- in Listing 285 we have specified `all: 1` so that the text wrapping will operate upon *all* code blocks;
- in Listing 286 we have *not* specified `all`, and instead, have specified that text wrapping should be applied to each of environments and mainDocument;
- in Listing 287 we have specified text wrapping for mainDocument and on a *per-name* basis for environments code blocks.

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap5.tex -l=textwrap3.yaml -m
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap5.tex -l=textwrap4.yaml -m
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap5.tex -l=textwrap5.yaml -m
```

we obtain the output shown in Listing 288.

LISTING 288: textwrap5-mod3.tex

Before the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

```
\begin{myenv}
  Within the environment; here
  is a line of text that can be
  wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}
```

After the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

We can explore the idea of per-name text wrapping given in Listing 287 by using Listing 289.



LISTING 289: textwrap6.tex

Before the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.

```
\begin{myenv}
Within the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}
```

```
\begin{another}
Within the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{another}
```

After the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.

In particular, upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap6.tex -l=textwrap5.yaml -m
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 290.

LISTING 290: textwrap6.tex using Listing 287

Before the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

```
\begin{myenv}
  Within the environment; here
  is a line of text that can be
  wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}
```

```
\begin{another}
  Within the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{another}
```

After the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

Notice that, because environments has been specified only for myenv (in Listing 287) that the environment named another has *not* had text wrapping applied to it.

The all field can be specified with exceptions which can either be done on a per-code-block or per-name basis; we explore this in relation to Listing 289 in the settings given in Listings 291 to 293.

LISTING 291: textwrap6.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 30
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all:
      except:
        - environments
```

LISTING 292: textwrap7.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 30
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all:
      except:
        - myenv
```

LISTING 293: textwrap8.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 30
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all:
      except:
        - mainDocument
```

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap6.tex -l=textwrap6.yaml -m
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap6.tex -l=textwrap7.yaml -m
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap6.tex -l=textwrap8.yaml -m
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 294 to 296.



LISTING 294: textwrap6.tex using Listing 291

```
Before the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

\begin{myenv}
  Within the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}

\begin{another}
  Within the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{another}

After the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.
```

LISTING 295: textwrap6.tex using Listing 292

```
Before the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

\begin{myenv}
  Within the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}

\begin{another}
  Within the environment; here
  is a line of text that can be
  wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{another}

After the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.
```

LISTING 296: textwrap6.tex using Listing 293

```
Before the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.

\begin{myenv}
  Within the environment; here
  is a line of text that can be
  wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}

\begin{another}
  Within the environment; here
  is a line of text that can be
  wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{another}

After the environment; here is a line of text that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
```

Notice that:

- in Listing 294 the text wrapping routine has not been applied to any environments because it has been switched off (per-code-block) in Listing 291;
- in Listing 295 the text wrapping routine has not been applied to myenv because it has been switched off (per-name) in Listing 292;
- in Listing 296 the text wrapping routine has not been applied to mainDocument because of the



settings in Listing 293.

The columns field has a variety of different ways that it can be specified; we've seen two basic ways already: the default (set to 0) and a positive integer (see Listing 289 on page 74, for example). We explore further options in Listings 297 to 299.

LISTING 297: textwrap9.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns:
      default: 30
      environments: 50
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all: 1
```

LISTING 298: textwrap10.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns:
      default: 30
      environments:
        default: 50
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all: 1
```

LISTING 299: textwrap11.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns:
      default: 30
      environments:
        myenv: 50
        another: 15
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all: 1
```

Listing 297 and Listing 298 are equivalent. Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap6.tex -l=textwrap9.yaml -m
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s textwrap6.tex -l=textwrap11.yaml -m
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 300 and 301.

LISTING 300: textwrap6.tex using Listing 297

Before the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

```
\begin{myenv}
  Within the environment; here is a line of text
  that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}
```

```
\begin{another}
  Within the environment; here is a line of text
  that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{another}
```

After the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.



LISTING 301: textwrap6.tex using Listing 299

```
Before the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.

\begin{myenv}
  Within the environment; here is a line of text
  that can be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
\end{myenv}

\begin{another}
  Within the
  environment;
  here is a line
  of text that
  can be wrapped
  by
  latexindent.pl.
\end{another}

After the environment; here
is a line of text that can be
wrapped by latexindent.pl.
```

Notice that:

- in Listing 300 the text for the mainDocument has been wrapped using 30 columns, while environments has been wrapped using 50 columns;
- in Listing 301 the text for myenv has been wrapped using 50 columns, the text for another has been wrapped using 15 columns, and mainDocument has been wrapped using 30 columns.

If you don't specify a default value on per-code-block basis, then the default value from columns will be inherited; if you don't specify a default value for columns then 80 will be used.

alignAtAmpersandTakesPriority is set to 1 by default; assuming that text wrapping is occurring on a per-code-block basis, and the current environment/code block is specified within Listing 39 on page 26 then text wrapping will be disabled for this code block.

If you wish to specify afterHeading commands (see Listing 132 on page 42) on a per-name basis, then you need to append the name with :heading, for example, you might use section:heading.

6.2 removeParagraphLineBreaks: modifying line breaks for paragraphs

N: 2017-05-27

When the -m switch is active latexindent.pl has the ability to remove line breaks from within paragraphs; the behaviour is controlled by the removeParagraphLineBreaks field, detailed in Listing 302. Thank you to [23] for shaping and assisting with the testing of this feature.

```
removeParagraphLineBreaks: {fields}
```

This feature is considered complimentary to the oneSentencePerLine feature described in Section 6.5 on page 87.



LISTING 302: removeParagraphLineBreaks

```

533 removeParagraphLineBreaks:
534   all: 0
535   beforeTextWrap: 0
536   alignAtAmpersandTakesPriority: 1
537   environments:
538     quotation: 0
539   ifElseFi: 0
540   optionalArguments: 0
541   mandatoryArguments: 0
542   items: 0
543   specialBeginEnd: 0
544   afterHeading: 0
545   preamble: 0
546   filecontents: 0
547   mainDocument: 0

```

This routine can be turned on *globally* for *every* code block type known to `latexindent.pl` (see Table 2 on page 45) by using the `all` switch; by default, this switch is *off*. Assuming that the `all` switch is off, then the routine can be controlled on a per-code-block-type basis, and within that, on a per-name basis. We will consider examples of each of these in turn, but before we do, let's specify what `latexindent.pl` considers as a paragraph:

- it must begin on its own line with either an alphabetic or numeric character, and not with any of the code-block types detailed in Table 2 on page 45;
- it can include line breaks, but finishes when it meets either a blank line, a `\par` command, or any of the user-specified settings in the `paragraphsStopAt` field, detailed in Listing 319 on page 82.

Let's start with the `.tex` file in Listing 303, together with the YAML settings in Listing 304.

LISTING 303: shortlines.tex

```

\begin{myenv}
The_lines
in_this
environment
are_very
short
and_contain
many_linebreaks.

Another
paragraph.
\end{myenv}

```

LISTING 304: remove-para1.yaml

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    all: 1

```

Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m shortlines.tex -o shortlines1.tex -l remove-para1.yaml
```

then we obtain the output given in Listing 305.

LISTING 305: shortlines1.tex

```

\begin{myenv}
uuuThe_lines_uuin_this_uuenvironment_are_very_uushort_and_contain_many_linebreaks.

uuuAnother_uuparagraph.
\end{myenv}

```

Keen readers may notice that some trailing white space must be present in the file in Listing 303 which has crept in to the output in Listing 305. This can be fixed using the YAML file in Listing 428 on page 101 and running, for example,



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m shortlines.tex -o shortlines1-tws.tex -l
remove-para1.yaml,removeTWS-before.yaml
```

in which case the output is as in Listing 306; notice that the double spaces present in Listing 305 have been addressed.

LISTING 306: shortlines1-tws.tex

```
\begin{myenv}
    The lines in this environment are very short and contain many linebreaks.

    Another paragraph.
\end{myenv}
```

Keeping with the settings in Listing 304, we note that the `all` switch applies to *all* code block types. So, for example, let's consider the files in Listings 307 and 308

LISTING 307: shortlines-mand.tex

```
\mycommand{
The lines
in this
command
are very
short
and contain
many linebreaks.

Another
paragraph.
}
```

LISTING 308: shortlines-opt.tex

```
\mycommand[
The lines
in this
command
are very
short
and contain
many linebreaks.

Another
paragraph.
]
```

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m shortlines-mand.tex -o shortlines-mand1.tex -l remove-para1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m shortlines-opt.tex -o shortlines-opt1.tex -l remove-para1.yaml
```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 309 and 310.

LISTING 309: shortlines-mand1.tex

```
\mycommand{
    The lines in this command are very short and contain many linebreaks.

    Another paragraph.
}
```

LISTING 310: shortlines-opt1.tex

```
\mycommand[
    The lines in this command are very short and contain many linebreaks.

    Another paragraph.
]
```

Assuming that we turn *off* the `all` switch (by setting it to 0), then we can control the behaviour of `removeParagraphLineBreaks` either on a per-code-block-type basis, or on a per-name basis.

For example, let's use the code in Listing 311, and consider the settings in Listings 312 and 313; note that in Listing 312 we specify that *every* environment should receive treatment from the routine, while in Listing 313 we specify that *only* the one environment should receive the treatment.



LISTING 311: shortlines-envs.tex

```

\begin{one}
The lines
in this
environment
are very
short
and contain
many linebreaks.

Another
paragraph.
\end{one}

\begin{two}
The lines
in this
environment
are very
short
and contain
many linebreaks.

Another
paragraph.
\end{two}

```

LISTING 312: remove-para2.yaml

-m

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    environments: 1

```

LISTING 313: remove-para3.yaml

-m

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    environments:
      one: 1

```

Upon running the commands

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m shortlines-envs.tex -o shortlines-envs2.tex -l remove-para2.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m shortlines-envs.tex -o shortlines-envs3.tex -l remove-para3.yaml

```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 314 and 315.

LISTING 314: shortlines-envs2.tex

```

\begin{one}
  The lines in this  environment are very  short and contain many linebreaks.

  Another  paragraph.
\end{one}

\begin{two}
  The lines in this  environment are very  short and contain many linebreaks.

  Another  paragraph.
\end{two}

```




LISTING 315: shortlines-envs3.tex

```

\begin{one}
  The lines in this  environment are very  short and contain many linebreaks.

  Another  paragraph.
\end{one}

\begin{two}
  The lines
  in this
  environment
  are very
  short
  and contain
  many linebreaks.

  Another
  paragraph.
\end{two}

```

The remaining code-block types can be customised in analogous ways, although note that commands, `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets`, `namedGroupingBracesBrackets`, `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets` are controlled by the `optionalArguments` and the `mandatoryArguments`.

The only special case is the `mainDocument` field; this is designed for ‘chapter’-type files that may contain paragraphs that are not within any other code-blocks. For example, consider the file in Listing 316, with the YAML settings in Listing 317.

Note: `mainDocument` replaces `masterDocument` which was used in previous versions of `latexindent.pl`. The field `masterDocument` is still supported, but it is anticipated to be removed in a future version, so I recommend using `mainDocument` instead.

LISTING 316: shortlines-md.tex

```

The lines
in this
document
are very
short
and contain
many linebreaks.

Another
paragraph.

\begin{myenv}
The lines
in this
document
are very
short
and contain
many linebreaks.
\end{myenv}

```

LISTING 317: remove-para4.yaml

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    mainDocument: 1

```

-m

Upon running the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m shortlines-md.tex -o shortlines-md4.tex -l remove-para4.yaml
```

then we obtain the output in Listing 318.

U: 2021-09-16



LISTING 318: shortlines-md4.tex

The lines in this document are very short and contain many linebreaks.

Another paragraph.

```
\begin{myenv}
  The lines
  in this
  document
  are very
  short
  and contain
  many linebreaks.
\end{myenv}
```

U: 2018-08-13

Note that the all field can take the same exceptions detailed in Listings 291 to 293.

`paragraphsStopAt: {fields}`

N: 2017-05-27

The paragraph line break routine considers blank lines and the `\par` command to be the end of a paragraph; you can fine tune the behaviour of the routine further by using the `paragraphsStopAt` fields, shown in Listing 319.

LISTING 319: paragraphsStopAt

```
548 paragraphsStopAt:
549     environments: 1
550     verbatim: 1
551     commands: 0
552     ifElseFi: 0
553     items: 0
554     specialBeginEnd: 0
555     heading: 0
556     filecontents: 0
557     comments: 0
```

The fields specified in `paragraphsStopAt` tell `latexindent.pl` to stop the current paragraph when it reaches a line that *begins* with any of the code-block types specified as 1 in Listing 319. By default, you'll see that the paragraph line break routine will stop when it reaches an environment or verbatim code block at the beginning of a line. It is *not* possible to specify these fields on a per-name basis.

Let's use the .tex file in Listing 320; we will, in turn, consider the settings in Listings 321 and 322.

LISTING 320: sl-stop.tex

```
These lines
are very
short
\emph{and} contain
many linebreaks.
\begin{myenv}
Body of myenv
\end{myenv}

Another
paragraph.
% a comment
% a comment
```

LISTING 321: stop-command.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    paragraphsStopAt:
      commands: 1
```

LISTING 322: stop-comment.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    paragraphsStopAt:
      comments: 1
```

Upon using the settings from Listing 317 on the previous page and running the commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m sl-stop.tex -o sl-stop4.tex -l remove-para4.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m sl-stop.tex -o sl-stop4-command.tex -l=remove-para4.yaml,stop-command.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m sl-stop.tex -o sl-stop4-comment.tex -l=remove-para4.yaml,stop-comment.yaml
```

we obtain the respective outputs in Listings 323 to 325; notice in particular that:

- in Listing 323 the paragraph line break routine has included commands and comments;
- in Listing 324 the paragraph line break routine has *stopped* at the `\emph` command, because in Listing 321 we have specified commands to be 1, and `\emph` is at the beginning of a line;
- in Listing 325 the paragraph line break routine has *stopped* at the comments, because in Listing 322 we have specified comments to be 1, and the comment is at the beginning of a line.

In all outputs in Listings 323 to 325 we notice that the paragraph line break routine has stopped at `\begin{myenv}` because, by default, environments is set to 1 in Listing 319 on the preceding page.

LISTING 323: sl-stop4.tex

```
These lines are very short \emph{and} contain many linebreaks.
\begin{myenv}
  Body of myenv
\end{myenv}

Another paragraph. % a comment% a comment
```

LISTING 324: sl-stop4-command.tex

```
These lines are very short
\emph{and} contain
many linebreaks.
\begin{myenv}
  Body of myenv
\end{myenv}

Another paragraph. % a comment% a comment
```

LISTING 325: sl-stop4-comment.tex

```
These lines are very short \emph{and} contain many linebreaks.
\begin{myenv}
  Body of myenv
\end{myenv}

Another paragraph.
% a comment
% a comment
```

6.3 Combining removeParagraphLineBreaks and textWrapOptions

The text wrapping routine (Section 6.1 on page 68) and remove paragraph line breaks routine (Section 6.2 on page 77) can be combined.

We motivate this feature with the code given in Listing 326.

LISTING 326: textwrap7.tex

```
This paragraph
has line breaks throughout its paragraph;
we would like to combine
the textwrapping
and paragraph removal routine.
```

Applying the text wrap routine from Section 6.1 on page 68 with, for example, Listing 285 on page 73 gives the output in Listing 327.



LISTING 327: textwrap7.tex using Listing 285

```
This paragraph
has line breaks throughout
its paragraph;
we would like to combine
the textwrapping
and paragraph removal
routine.
```

The text wrapping routine has behaved as expected, but it may be desired to remove paragraph line breaks *before* performing the text wrapping routine. The desired behaviour can be achieved by employing the beforeTextWrap switch.

Explicitly, using the settings in Listing 329 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap7.tex -l=textwrap12.yaml -o=+-mod12
```

we obtain the output in Listing 328.

LISTING 328: textwrap7-mod12.tex

```
This paragraph has line
breaks throughout its
paragraph; we would like to
combine the textwrapping and
paragraph removal routine.
```

LISTING 329: textwrap12.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 30
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    all: 1
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    all: 1
    beforeTextWrap: 1
```

In Listing 328 the paragraph line breaks have first been removed from Listing 326, and then the text wrapping routine has been applied. It is envisaged that variants of Listing 329 will be among the most useful settings for these two features.

6.3.1 text wrapping beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks

N: 2021-07-31

I think it likely that most users will wish to employ the beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks option for the text wrap routine.

To motivate its use, we begin with the file in Listing 330.

LISTING 330: textwrap-bfccb.tex

```
one
  two three four \test{test
    five six seven
eight nine} ten eleven
twelve thirteen
  fourteen fifteen sixteen seventeen
```

Using the settings in Listing 329 and running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap-bfccb.tex -l=textwrap12.yaml -o=+-mod12
```

gives the output in Listing 331



LISTING 331: textwrap-bfccb-mod12.tex

```
one two three four
\test{test five six seven eight
  nine} ten
eleven twelve thirteen
fourteen fifteen sixteen
seventeen
----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
      5    10   15   20   25   30   35   40
```

Note that we have added a ‘ruler’ to Listing 331 to assist with measuring.

The output in Listing 331 is not ideal, but it is *expected*. The reasoning is as follows:

- latexindent.pl first of all searches for code blocks (see Table 2 on page 45);
- it replaces each code block with a unique identifying string;
- with the settings of Listing 329 in place, it performs the paragraph line break removal, and then the text wrapping routine first of all on the `text` command, and then on the surrounding text;
- the surrounding text does not know that `text` is a command.

We can instruct latexindent.pl to perform text wrapping *before searching for child code blocks* by using the `beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks` field.

We save the *quick-start* settings from Listing 267 into Listing 332 and change the value of `columns` for demonstration. Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap-bfccb.tex -l=textwrap13.yaml -o=+-mod13
```

we receive the output in Listing 333.

LISTING 332: textwrap13.yaml (tweaked quick start)

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 40                #<--- Changed from quick start
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks: 1
    mainDocument: 1
    afterHeading: 1
    items: 1
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    mainDocument: 1
    afterHeading: 1
    items: 1
    beforeTextWrap: 1
```

LISTING 333: textwrap-bfccb-mod13.tex

```
one two three four \test{test five six
  seven eight nine} ten eleven twelve
thirteen fourteen fifteen sixteen
seventeen
----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
      5    10   15   20   25   30   35   40   45   50   55   60   65   70   75   80
```

This output is different from Listing 331, but is still not ideal, as the `test` command has indented its mandatory argument. We can employ `noAdditionalIndent` from Section 5.8 on page 44 in Listing 335 and run the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap-bfccb.tex -l=textwrap14.yaml -o=+-mod14
```

to receive the output in Listing 334.

LISTING 334: textwrap-bfccb-mod14.tex

```
one two three four \test{test five six
seven eight nine} ten eleven twelve
thirteen fourteen fifteen sixteen
seventeen
----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
 5   10   15   20   25   30   35   40
```

LISTING 335: textwrap14.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 40
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks: 1
    mainDocument: 1
    afterHeading: 1
    items: 1
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    mainDocument: 1
    afterHeading: 1
    items: 1
    beforeTextWrap: 1

noAdditionalIndent:  #<--- NEW BIT
test: 1              #<--- NEW BIT
```

For reference, let's say that we had started from Listing 329, which instructs `latexindent.pl` to apply the text-wrapping and paragraph-line-break-removal routines to *all* code blocks. In order to achieve the output in Listing 334, then we would need to employ an exception, which we demonstrate in Listing 336.

LISTING 336: textwrap15.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 40
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
    beforeFindingChildCodeBlocks: 1
    all: 1
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    all:
      except:
        - test
    beforeTextWrap: 1

noAdditionalIndent:
  test: 1
```

6.4 Summary of text wrapping

N: 2021-07-31

I consider the most useful starting point for text wrapping to be given in Section 6.1.1 and Section 6.3.1.

Starting from Listing 267, it is likely that you will have to experiment with making adjustments (such as that given in Listing 335) depending on your preference.

It is important to note the following:

- verbatim code blocks of all types will *not* be affected by the text wrapping routine. See the demonstration in Listing 273 on page 70, together with environments: Listing 18 on page 22, commands: Listing 19 on page 22, `noIndentBlock`: Listing 24, `specialBeginEnd`: Listing 126 on page 41;
- comments will *not* be affected by the text wrapping routine (see Listing 275 on page 71);
- it is possible to wrap text on a per-code-block and a per-name basis;

U: 2018-08-13



- indentation is performed *after* the text wrapping routine; as such, indented code will likely exceed any maximum value set in the columns field.

6.5 oneSentencePerLine: modifying line breaks for sentences

N: 2018-01-13

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to format your file so that it puts one sentence per line. Thank you to [21] for helping to shape and test this feature. The behaviour of this part of the script is controlled by the switches detailed in Listing 337, all of which we discuss next.

LISTING 337: oneSentencePerLine

```

490  oneSentencePerLine:
491      manipulateSentences: 0
492      removeSentenceLineBreaks: 1
493      textWrapSentences: 0
494      sentenceIndent: ""
495      sentencesFollow:
496          par: 1
497          blankLine: 1
498          fullStop: 1
499          exclamationMark: 1
500          questionMark: 1
501          rightBrace: 1
502          commentOnPreviousLine: 1
503          other: 0
504      sentencesBeginWith:
505          A-Z: 1
506          a-z: 0
507          other: 0
508      sentencesEndWith:
509          basicFullStop: 0
510          betterFullStop: 1
511          exclamationMark: 1
512          questionMark: 1
513          other: 0

```

`manipulateSentences: 0|1`

This is a binary switch that details if `latexindent.pl` should perform the sentence manipulation routine; it is *off* (set to 0) by default, and you will need to turn it on (by setting it to 1) if you want the script to modify line breaks surrounding and within sentences.

`removeSentenceLineBreaks: 0|1`

When operating upon sentences `latexindent.pl` will, by default, remove internal line breaks as `removeSentenceLineBreaks` is set to 1. Setting this switch to 0 instructs `latexindent.pl` not to do so.

For example, consider `multiple-sentences.tex` shown in Listing 338.

LISTING 338: multiple-sentences.tex

```

This is the first
sentence. This is the; second, sentence. This is the
third sentence.

This is the fourth
sentence! This is the fifth sentence? This is the
sixth sentence.

```

If we use the YAML files in Listings 340 and 342, and run the commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml
```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 339 and 341.

LISTING 339: multiple-sentences.tex
using Listing 340

```
This is the first sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.
```

```
This is the fourth sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 340:
manipulate-sentences.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
```

LISTING 341: multiple-sentences.tex
using Listing 342

```
This is the first
sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the
third sentence.
```

```
This is the fourth
sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the
sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 342:
keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    removeSentenceLineBreaks: 0
```

Notice, in particular, that the ‘internal’ sentence line breaks in Listing 338 have been removed in Listing 339, but have not been removed in Listing 341.

The remainder of the settings displayed in Listing 337 on the preceding page instruct `latexindent.pl` on how to define a sentence. From the perspective of `latexindent.pl` a sentence must:

- *follow* a certain character or set of characters (see Listing 343); by default, this is either `\par`, a blank line, a full stop/period (`.`), exclamation mark (`!`), question mark (`?`) right brace (`}`) or a comment on the previous line;
- *begin* with a character type (see Listing 344); by default, this is only capital letters;
- *end* with a character (see Listing 345); by default, these are full stop/period (`.`), exclamation mark (`!`) and question mark (`?`).

In each case, you can specify the other field to include any pattern that you would like; you can specify anything in this field using the language of regular expressions.

LISTING 343: sentencesFollow

-m

```
sentencesFollow:
  par: 1
  blankLine: 1
  fullStop: 1
  exclamationMark: 1
  questionMark: 1
  rightBrace: 1

  commentOnPreviousLine: 1
  other: 0
```

LISTING 344: sentencesBeginWith

-m

```
sentencesBeginWith:
  A-Z: 1
  a-z: 0
  other: 0
```

LISTING 345: sentencesEndWith

-m

```
sentencesEndWith:
  basicFullStop: 0
  betterFullStop: 1
  exclamationMark: 1
  questionMark: 1
  other: 0
```




6.5.1 sentencesFollow

Let's explore a few of the switches in `sentencesFollow`; let's start with Listing 338 on page 87, and use the YAML settings given in Listing 347. Using the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=sentences-follow1.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 346.

LISTING 346: `multiple-sentences.tex` using Listing 347

```
This is the first sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.
```

```
This is the fourth
sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 347: `sentences-follow1.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
  sentencesFollow:
    blankLine: 0
```

Notice that, because `blankLine` is set to 0, `latexindent.pl` will not seek sentences following a blank line, and so the fourth sentence has not been accounted for.

We can explore the other field in Listing 343 with the `.tex` file detailed in Listing 348.

LISTING 348: `multiple-sentences1.tex`

```
(Some sentences stand alone in brackets.) This is the first
sentence. This is the; second, sentence. This is the
third sentence.
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences1 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences1 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml,sentences-follow2.yaml
```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 349 and 350.

LISTING 349: `multiple-sentences1.tex` using Listing 340 on the preceding page

```
(Some sentences stand alone in brackets.) This is the first
sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.
```

LISTING 350: `multiple-sentences1.tex` using Listing 351

```
(Some sentences stand alone in brackets.)
This is the first sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.
```

LISTING 351: `sentences-follow2.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
  sentencesFollow:
    other: "\")"
```

Notice that in Listing 349 the first sentence after the `)` has not been accounted for, but that following the inclusion of Listing 351, the output given in Listing 350 demonstrates that the sentence *has* been accounted for correctly.

6.5.2 sentencesBeginWith

By default, `latexindent.pl` will only assume that sentences begin with the upper case letters A-Z; you can instruct the script to define sentences to begin with lower case letters (see Listing 344), and we can use the `other` field to define sentences to begin with other characters.



LISTING 352: multiple-sentences2.tex

```
This is the first
sentence.

$a$ can
represent a
number. 7 is
at the beginning of this sentence.
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences2 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences2 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml,sentences-begin1.yaml
```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 353 and 354.

LISTING 353: multiple-sentences2.tex using Listing 340 on page 88

```
This is the first sentence.

$a$ can
represent a
number. 7 is
at the beginning of this sentence.
```

LISTING 354: multiple-sentences2.tex using Listing 355

```
This is the first sentence.

$a$ can represent a number.
7 is at the beginning of this sentence.
```

LISTING 355: sentences-begin1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesBeginWith:
      other: "\\$|[0-9]"
```

Notice that in Listing 353, the first sentence has been accounted for but that the subsequent sentences have not. In Listing 354, all of the sentences have been accounted for, because the other field in Listing 355 has defined sentences to begin with either \$ or any numeric digit, 0 to 9.

6.5.3 sentencesEndWith

Let's return to Listing 338 on page 87; we have already seen the default way in which latexindent.pl will operate on the sentences in this file in Listing 339 on page 88. We can populate the other field with any character that we wish; for example, using the YAML specified in Listing 357 and the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=sentences-end1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=sentences-end2.yaml
```

then we obtain the output in Listing 356.

LISTING 356: multiple-sentences.tex using Listing 357

```
This is the first sentence.
This is the;
second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.

This is the fourth sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 357: sentences-end1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      other: "\\:|\\;|\\,,"
```



LISTING 358: multiple-sentences.tex using Listing 359

```
This is the first sentence.
This is the;
second,
sentence.
This is the third sentence.

This is the fourth sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 359: sentences-end2.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      other: "\:|\;|\,"
    sentencesBeginWith:
      a-z: 1
```

There is a subtle difference between the output in Listings 356 and 358; in particular, in Listing 356 the word `sentence` has not been defined as a sentence, because we have not instructed `latexindent.pl` to begin sentences with lower case letters. We have changed this by using the settings in Listing 359, and the associated output in Listing 358 reflects this.

Referencing Listing 345 on page 88, you'll notice that there is a field called `basicFullStop`, which is set to 0, and that the `betterFullStop` is set to 1 by default.

Let's consider the file shown in Listing 360.

LISTING 360: url.tex

```
This sentence, \url{tex.stackexchange.com/} finishes here. Second sentence.
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl url -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 361.

LISTING 361: url.tex using Listing 340 on page 88

```
This sentence, \url{tex.stackexchange.com/} finishes here.
Second sentence.
```

Notice that the full stop within the url has been interpreted correctly. This is because, within the `betterFullStop`, full stops at the end of sentences have the following properties:

- they are ignored within `e.g.` and `i.e.`;
- they can not be immediately followed by a lower case or upper case letter;
- they can not be immediately followed by a hyphen, comma, or number.

If you find that the `betterFullStop` does not work for your purposes, then you can switch it off by setting it to 0, and you can experiment with the `other` field. You can also seek to customise the `betterFullStop` routine by using the *fine tuning*, detailed in Listing 521 on page 127.

The `basicFullStop` routine should probably be avoided in most situations, as it does not accommodate the specifications above. For example, using the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl url -m -l=alt-full-stop1.yaml
```

and the YAML in Listing 363 gives the output in Listing 362.

N: 2019-07-13



LISTING 362: url.tex using Listing 363

```
This sentence, \url{tex.
  stackexchange.com/} finishes here.Second sentence.
```

LISTING 363: alt-full-stop1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      basicFullStop: 1
      betterFullStop: 0
```

Notice that the full stop within the URL has not been accommodated correctly because of the non-default settings in Listing 363.

6.5.4 Features of the oneSentencePerLine routine

The sentence manipulation routine takes place *after* verbatim environments, preamble and trailing comments have been accounted for; this means that any characters within these types of code blocks will not be part of the sentence manipulation routine.

For example, if we begin with the .tex file in Listing 364, and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences3 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
```

then we obtain the output in Listing 365.

LISTING 364: multiple-sentences3.tex

```
The first sentence continues after the verbatim
\begin{verbatim}
  there are sentences within this. These
  will not be operated
  upon by latexindent.pl.
\end{verbatim}
and finishes here. Second sentence % a commented full stop.
contains trailing comments,
which are ignored.
```

LISTING 365: multiple-sentences3.tex using Listing 340 on page 88

```
The first sentence continues after the verbatim \begin{verbatim}
  there are sentences within this. These
  will not be operated
  upon by latexindent.pl.
\end{verbatim} and finishes here.
Second sentence contains trailing comments, which are ignored.
% a commented full stop.
```

Furthermore, if sentences run across environments then, by default, the line breaks internal to the sentence will be removed. For example, if we use the .tex file in Listing 366 and run the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences4 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences4 -m -l=keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml
```

then we obtain the output in Listings 367 and 368.



LISTING 366: multiple-sentences4.tex

```
This sentence
\begin{itemize}
  \item continues
\end{itemize}
across itemize
and finishes here.
```

LISTING 367: multiple-sentences4.tex using Listing 340 on page 88

This sentence \begin{itemize} \item continues \end{itemize} across itemize and finishes here.

LISTING 368: multiple-sentences4.tex using Listing 342 on page 88

```
This sentence
\begin{itemize}
  \item continues
\end{itemize}
across itemize
and finishes here.
```

Once you've read Section 6.6, you will know that you can accommodate the removal of internal sentence line breaks by using the YAML in Listing 370 and the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences4 -m -l=item-rules2.yaml
```

the output of which is shown in Listing 369.

LISTING 369: multiple-sentences4.tex using Listing 370

```
This sentence
\begin{itemize}
  \item continues
\end{itemize}
across itemize and finishes here.
```

LISTING 370: item-rules2.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
  items:
    ItemStartsOnOwnLine: 1
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

6.5.5 Text wrapping and indenting sentences

N: 2018-08-13

The oneSentencePerLine can be instructed to perform text wrapping and indentation upon sentences.

Let's use the code in Listing 371.

LISTING 371: multiple-sentences5.tex

```
A distincao entre conteudo \emph{real} e conteudo \emph{intencional} esta
relacionada, ainda, a distincao entre o conceito husserliano de
\emph{experiencia} e o uso popular desse termo. No sentido comum,
o \term{experimentado} e um complexo de eventos exteriores,
e o \term{experimentar} consiste em percepcoes (alem de julgamentos e outros
atos) nas quais tais eventos aparecem como objetos, e objetos frequentemente
to the end.
```

Referencing Listing 373, and running the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences5 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml
```

we receive the output given in Listing 372.



LISTING 372: multiple-sentences5.tex using Listing 373

```
A distincao entre conteudo \emph{real} e conteudo
\emph{intencional} esta relacionada, ainda, a
distincao entre o conceito husserliano de
\emph{experencia} e o uso popular desse termo.
No sentido comum, o \term{experimentado} e um
complexo de eventos exteriores, e o
\term{experimental} consiste em percepcoes (alem
de julgamentos e outros atos) nas quais tais
eventos aparecem como objetos, e objetos
frequentemente to the end.
```

LISTING 373: sentence-wrap1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    removeSentenceLineBreaks: 1
    textWrapSentences: 1
    sentenceIndent: "  "
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 50
```

If you wish to specify the columns field on a per-code-block basis for sentences, then you would use sentence; explicitly, starting with Listing 297 on page 76, for example, you would replace/append environments with, for example, sentence: 50.

If you specify textWrapSentences as 1, but do *not* specify a value for columns then the text wrapping will *not* operate on sentences, and you will see a warning in indent.log.

The indentation of sentences requires that sentences are stored as code blocks. This means that you may need to tweak Listing 345 on page 88. Let's explore this in relation to Listing 374.

LISTING 374: multiple-sentences6.tex

```
Consider the following:
\begin{itemize}
  \item firstly.
  \item secondly.
\end{itemize}
```

By default, latexindent.pl will find the full-stop within the first item, which means that, upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences6 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences6 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml
-y="modifyLineBreaks:oneSentencePerLine:sentenceIndent:''"
```

we receive the respective output in Listing 375 and Listing 376.

LISTING 375: multiple-sentences6-mod1.tex using Listing 373

```
Consider the following: \begin{itemize} \item
firstly.
\item secondly.
\end{itemize}
```

LISTING 376: multiple-sentences6-mod2.tex using Listing 373 and no sentence indentation

```
Consider the following: \begin{itemize} \item
firstly.
\item secondly.
\end{itemize}
```

We note that Listing 375 the itemize code block has *not* been indented appropriately. This is because the oneSentencePerLine has been instructed to store sentences (because Listing 373); each sentence is then searched for code blocks.

We can tweak the settings in Listing 345 on page 88 to ensure that full stops are not followed by item commands, and that the end of sentences contains \end{itemize} as in Listing 377 (if you intend to use this, ensure that you remove the line breaks from the other field).



LISTING 377: itemize.yaml

-m

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      betterFullStop: 0
      other: '(?:\\.\\)(?!\\h*[a-z]))|(?:(<!(?:(:e\\.g)
        |(?:i\\.e)|(?:etc))))\\. (?:\\h*\\R*(?:\\end\\{itemize\\})?)
        (?!(?:[a-z]|[A-Z]|\\-|\\,|[0-9]|(?:\\R|\\h)*\\item)))'
```

Upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences6 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml,itemize.yaml
```

we receive the output in Listing 378.

LISTING 378: multiple-sentences6-mod3.tex using Listing 373 and Listing 377

```

Consider the following: \begin{itemize} \item
    firstly. \item secondly.
\end{itemize}
```

Notice that the sentence has received indentation, and that the `itemize` code block has been found and indented correctly.

6.6 Poly-switches

Every other field in the `modifyLineBreaks` field uses poly-switches, and can take one of the following integer values:

- 1 *remove mode*: line breaks before or after the *<part of thing>* can be removed (assuming that `preserveBlankLines` is set to 0);
- 0 *off mode*: line breaks will not be modified for the *<part of thing>* under consideration;
- 1 *add mode*: a line break will be added before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, assuming that there is not already a line break before or after the *<part of thing>*;
- 2 *comment then add mode*: a comment symbol will be added, followed by a line break before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, assuming that there is not already a comment and line break before or after the *<part of thing>*;
- 3 *add then blank line mode*: a line break will be added before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, assuming that there is not already a line break before or after the *<part of thing>*, followed by a blank line;
- 4 *add blank line mode*: a blank line will be added before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, even if the *<part of thing>* is already on its own line.

In the above, *<part of thing>* refers to either the *begin statement*, *body* or *end statement* of the code blocks detailed in Table 2 on page 45. All poly-switches are *off* by default; `latexindent.pl` searches first of all for per-name settings, and then followed by global per-thing settings.

6.6.1 Poly-switches for environments

We start by viewing a snippet of `defaultSettings.yaml` in Listing 379; note that it contains *global* settings (immediately after the `environments` field) and that *per-name* settings are also allowed – in the case of Listing 379, settings for `equation*` have been specified for demonstration. Note that all poly-switches are *off* (set to 0) by default.

U: 2017-08-21

N: 2017-08-21

N: 2019-07-13



LISTING 379: environments

```

558 environments:
559     BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 0
560     BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 0
561     EndStartsOnOwnLine: 0
562     EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 0
563     equation*:
564         BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 0
565         BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 0
566         EndStartsOnOwnLine: 0
567         EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 0

```

Let's begin with the simple example given in Listing 380; note that we have annotated key parts of the file using ♠, ♥, ♦ and ♣, these will be related to fields specified in Listing 379.

LISTING 380: env-mlb1.tex

```
before words ♠ \begin{myenv} ♥ body of myenv ♦ \end{myenv} ♣ after words
```

6.6.1.1 Adding line breaks: BeginStartsOnOwnLine and BodyStartsOnOwnLine

Let's explore BeginStartsOnOwnLine and BodyStartsOnOwnLine in Listings 381 and 382, and in particular, let's allow each of them in turn to take a value of 1.

LISTING 381: env-mlb1.yaml

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 1

```

LISTING 382: env-mlb2.yaml

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 1

```

After running the following commands,

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb2.yaml

```

the output is as in Listings 383 and 384 respectively.

LISTING 383: env-mlb.tex using Listing 381

```

before words
\begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv} after words

```

LISTING 384: env-mlb.tex using Listing 382

```

before words \begin{myenv}
body of myenv\end{myenv} after words

```

There are a couple of points to note:

- in Listing 383 a line break has been added at the point denoted by ♠ in Listing 380; no other line breaks have been changed;
- in Listing 384 a line break has been added at the point denoted by ♥ in Listing 380; furthermore, note that the *body* of myenv has received the appropriate (default) indentation.

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 381 and 382 so that they are 2 and save them into env-mlb3.yaml and env-mlb4.yaml respectively (see Listings 385 and 386).

LISTING 385: env-mlb3.yaml

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 2

```

LISTING 386: env-mlb4.yaml

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 2

```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 387 and 388.

LISTING 387: env-mlb.tex using Listing 385

```

before words%
\begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv} after words

```

LISTING 388: env-mlb.tex using Listing 386

```

before words \begin{myenv}%
body of myenv\end{myenv} after words

```




Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 383 and 384, but this time a comment symbol has been added before adding the line break; in both cases, trailing horizontal space has been stripped before doing so.

N: 2017-08-21

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 381 and 382 so that they are 3 and save them into env-mlb5.yaml and env-mlb6.yaml respectively (see Listings 389 and 390).

LISTING 389: env-mlb5.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 3
```

LISTING 390: env-mlb6.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 3
```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 391 and 392.

LISTING 391: env-mlb.tex using Listing 389	LISTING 392: env-mlb.tex using Listing 390
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv} after words	before words \begin{myenv} body of myenv\end{myenv} after words

Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 383 and 384, but this time a *blank line* has been added after adding the line break.

N: 2019-07-13

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 389 and 390 so that they are 4 and save them into env-beg4.yaml and env-body4.yaml respectively (see Listings 393 and 394).

LISTING 393: env-beg4.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 4
```

LISTING 394: env-body4.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 4
```

We will demonstrate this poly-switch value using the code in Listing 395.

LISTING 395: env-mlb1.tex

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-beg4.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-body4.yaml
```

then we receive the respective outputs in Listings 396 and 397.

LISTING 396: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 393	LISTING 397: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 394
before words \begin{myenv} body of myenv \end{myenv} after words	before words \begin{myenv} body of myenv \end{myenv} after words

We note in particular that, by design, for this value of the poly-switches:

1. in Listing 396 a blank line has been inserted before the \begin statement, even though the \begin statement was already on its own line;



2. in Listing 397 a blank line has been inserted before the beginning of the *body*, even though it already began on its own line.

6.6.1.2 Adding line breaks using `EndStartsOnOwnLine` and `EndFinishesWithLineBreak`

Let's explore `EndStartsOnOwnLine` and `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` in Listings 398 and 399, and in particular, let's allow each of them in turn to take a value of 1.

LISTING 398: `env-mlb7.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 1
```

LISTING 399: `env-mlb8.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb7.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb8.yaml
```

the output is as in Listings 400 and 401.

LISTING 400: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 398

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv
\end{myenv} after words
```

LISTING 401: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 399

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv}
after words
```

There are a couple of points to note:

- in Listing 400 a line break has been added at the point denoted by \diamond in Listing 380 on page 96; no other line breaks have been changed and the `\end{myenv}` statement has *not* received indentation (as intended);
- in Listing 401 a line break has been added at the point denoted by \clubsuit in Listing 380 on page 96.

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 398 and 399 so that they are 2 and save them into `env-mlb9.yaml` and `env-mlb10.yaml` respectively (see Listings 402 and 403).

LISTING 402: `env-mlb9.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

LISTING 403: `env-mlb10.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 404 and 405.

LISTING 404: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 402

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv%
\end{myenv} after words
```

LISTING 405: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 403

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv}%
after words
```

Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 400 and 401, but this time a comment symbol has been added before adding the line break; in both cases, trailing horizontal space has been stripped before doing so.

N: 2017-08-21

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 398 and 399 so that they are 3 and save them into `env-mlb11.yaml` and `env-mlb12.yaml` respectively (see Listings 406 and 407).

LISTING 406: `env-mlb11.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 3
```

LISTING 407: `env-mlb12.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 3
```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 408 and 409.



LISTING 408: env-mlb.tex using Listing 406

before words `\begin{myenv}`body of myenv
`\end{myenv}` after words

LISTING 409: env-mlb.tex using Listing 407

before words `\begin{myenv}`body of myenv`\end{myenv}`
 after words

Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 400 and 401, and that a *blank line* has been added after the line break.

N: 2019-07-13

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 406 and 407 so that they are 4 and save them into env-end4.yaml and env-end-f4.yaml respectively (see Listings 410 and 411).

LISTING 410: env-end4.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 4
```

LISTING 411: env-end-f4.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 4
```

We will demonstrate this poly-switch value using the code from Listing 395 on page 97.

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-end4.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-end-f4.yaml
```

then we receive the respective outputs in Listings 412 and 413.

LISTING 412: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 410

before words
`\begin{myenv}`
 body of myenv

`\end{myenv}`
 after words

LISTING 413: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 411

before words
`\begin{myenv}`
 body of myenv
`\end{myenv}`

 after words

We note in particular that, by design, for this value of the poly-switches:

1. in Listing 412 a blank line has been inserted before the `\end` statement, even though the `\end` statement was already on its own line;
2. in Listing 413 a blank line has been inserted after the `\end` statement, even though it already began on its own line.

6.6.1.3 poly-switches 1, 2, and 3 only add line breaks when necessary

If you ask `latexindent.pl` to add a line break (possibly with a comment) using a poly-switch value of 1 (or 2 or 3), it will only do so if necessary. For example, if you process the file in Listing 414 using poly-switch values of 1, 2, or 3, it will be left unchanged.

LISTING 414: env-mlb2.tex

before words
`\begin{myenv}`
 body of myenv
`\end{myenv}`
 after words

LISTING 415: env-mlb3.tex

before words
`\begin{myenv}` %
 body of myenv %
`\end{myenv}` %
 after words

Setting the poly-switches to a value of 4 instructs `latexindent.pl` to add a line break even if the *<part of thing>* is already on its own line; see Listings 396 and 397 and Listings 412 and 413.

In contrast, the output from processing the file in Listing 415 will vary depending on the poly-switches used; in Listing 416 you'll see that the comment symbol after the `\begin{myenv}` has been moved to the next line, as `BodyStartsOnOwnLine` is set to 1. In Listing 417 you'll see that the comment has been accounted for correctly because `BodyStartsOnOwnLine` has been set to 2, and



the comment symbol has *not* been moved to its own line. You're encouraged to experiment with Listing 415 and by setting the other poly-switches considered so far to 2 in turn.

LISTING 416: env-mlb3.tex using
Listing 382 on page 96

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
%
  body of myenv%
\end{myenv}%
after words
```

LISTING 417: env-mlb3.tex using
Listing 386 on page 96

```
before words
\begin{myenv} %
  body of myenv%
\end{myenv}%
after words
```

The details of the discussion in this section have concerned *global* poly-switches in the environments field; each switch can also be specified on a *per-name* basis, which would take priority over the global values; with reference to Listing 379 on page 96, an example is shown for the equation* environment.

6.6.1.4 Removing line breaks (poly-switches set to -1)

Setting poly-switches to -1 tells latexindent.pl to remove line breaks of the *<part of the thing>*, if necessary. We will consider the example code given in Listing 418, noting in particular the positions of the line break highlighters, ♠, ♥, ♦ and ♣, together with the associated YAML files in Listings 419 to 422.

LISTING 418: env-mlb4.tex

```
before words♠
\begin{myenv}♥
body of myenv♦
\end{myenv}♣
after words
```

LISTING 419: env-mlb13.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

LISTING 420: env-mlb14.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

LISTING 421: env-mlb15.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

LISTING 422: env-mlb16.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
```

After running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb14.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb15.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb16.yaml
```

we obtain the respective output in Listings 423 to 426.



LISTING 423: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 419

```
before words\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 424: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 420

```
before words
\begin{myenv}body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 425: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 421

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 426: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 422

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv
\end{myenv}after words
```

Notice that in:

- Listing 423 the line break denoted by ♠ in Listing 418 has been removed;
- Listing 424 the line break denoted by ♥ in Listing 418 has been removed;
- Listing 425 the line break denoted by ♦ in Listing 418 has been removed;
- Listing 426 the line break denoted by ♣ in Listing 418 has been removed.

We examined each of these cases separately for clarity of explanation, but you can combine all of the YAML settings in Listings 419 to 422 into one file; alternatively, you could tell `latexindent.pl` to load them all by using the following command, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 380 on page 96.

6.6.1.5 About trailing horizontal space

Recall that on page 26 we discussed the YAML field `removeTrailingWhitespace`, and that it has two (binary) switches to determine if horizontal space should be removed beforeProcessing and afterProcessing. The beforeProcessing is particularly relevant when considering the `-m` switch; let's consider the file shown in Listing 427, which highlights trailing spaces.

LISTING 427: env-mlb5.tex

```
before_words   ♠
\begin{myenv}   ♥
body_of_myenv  ♦
\end{myenv}    ♣
after_words
```

LISTING 428: removeTWS-before.yaml

```
removeTrailingWhitespace:
  beforeProcessing: 1
```

The output from the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb5.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb5.tex -l
env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml,removeTWS-before.yaml
```

is shown, respectively, in Listings 429 and 430; note that the trailing horizontal white space has been preserved (by default) in Listing 429, while in Listing 430, it has been removed using the switch specified in Listing 428.

LISTING 429: env-mlb5.tex using Listings 423 to 426

```
before_words\begin{myenv}body_of_myenv\end{myenv}after_words
```



LISTING 430: env-mlb5.tex using Listings 423 to 426 and Listing 428

```
before words\begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv}after words
```

6.6.1.6 poly-switch line break removal and blank lines

Now let's consider the file in Listing 431, which contains blank lines.

LISTING 431: env-mlb6.tex

```
before words♠

\begin{myenv}♥

body of myenv◇

\end{myenv}♣

after words
```

LISTING 432:

```
UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml
```

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  preserveBlankLines: 0
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb6.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb6.tex -l
env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml,UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml
```

we receive the respective outputs in Listings 433 and 434. In Listing 433 we see that the multiple blank lines have each been condensed into one blank line, but that blank lines have *not* been removed by the poly-switches – this is because, by default, `preserveBlankLines` is set to 1. By contrast, in Listing 434, we have allowed the poly-switches to remove blank lines because, in Listing 432, we have set `preserveBlankLines` to 0.

LISTING 433: env-mlb6.tex using Listings 423 to 426

```
before words

\begin{myenv}

body of myenv

\end{myenv}

after words
```

LISTING 434: env-mlb6.tex using Listings 423 to 426 and Listing 432

```
before words\begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv}after words
```

We can explore this further using the blank-line poly-switch value of 3; let's use the file given in Listing 435.

LISTING 435: env-mlb7.tex

```
\begin{one} one text \end{one} \begin{two} two text \end{two}
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb7.tex -l env-mlb12.yaml,env-mlb13.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb7.tex -l
env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml
```

we receive the outputs given in Listings 436 and 437.



LISTING 436: env-mlb7-preserve.tex

```
\begin{one} one text \end{one}

\begin{two} two text \end{two}
```

LISTING 437: env-mlb7-no-preserve.tex

```
\begin{one} one text \end{one} \begin{two} two text \end{two}
```

Notice that in:

- Listing 436 that `\end{one}` has added a blank line, because of the value of `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` in Listing 407 on page 98, and even though the line break ahead of `\begin{two}` should have been removed (because of `BeginStartsOnOwnLine` in Listing 419 on page 100), the blank line has been preserved by default;
- Listing 437, by contrast, has had the additional line-break removed, because of the settings in Listing 432.

6.6.2 Poly-switches for double back slash

N: 2019-07-13

With reference to `lookForAlignDelims` (see Listing 39 on page 26) you can specify poly-switches to dictate the line-break behaviour of double back slashes in environments (Listing 41 on page 27), commands (Listing 75 on page 33), or special code blocks (Listing 114 on page 39). Note that for these poly-switches to take effect, the name of the code block must necessarily be specified within `lookForAlignDelims` (Listing 39 on page 26); we will demonstrate this in what follows.

Consider the code given in Listing 438.

LISTING 438: tabular3.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 ★\\□ 3 & 4 ★\\□
\end{tabular}
```

Referencing Listing 438:

- DBS stands for *double back slash*;
- line breaks ahead of the double back slash are annotated by ★, and are controlled by `DBSStartsOnOwnLine`;
- line breaks after the double back slash are annotated by □, and are controlled by `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak`.

Let's explore each of these in turn.

6.6.2.1 Double back slash starts on own line

We explore `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` (★ in Listing 438); starting with the code in Listing 438, together with the YAML files given in Listing 440 and Listing 442 and running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS2.yaml
```

then we receive the respective output given in Listing 439 and Listing 441.

LISTING 439: tabular3.tex using Listing 440

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2
  \\ 3 & 4
  \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 440: DBS1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 1
```



LISTING 441: tabular3.tex using
Listing 442

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 %
  \\ 3 & 4%
  \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 442: DBS2.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    tabular:
      DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

We note that

- Listing 440 specifies `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` for *every* environment (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 42 on page 27); the double back slashes from Listing 438 have been moved to their own line in Listing 439;
- Listing 442 specifies `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` on a *per-name* basis for `tabular` (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 42 on page 27); the double back slashes from Listing 438 have been moved to their own line in Listing 441, having added comment symbols before moving them.

6.6.2.2 Double back slash finishes with line break

Let's now explore `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` (□ in Listing 438); starting with the code in Listing 438, together with the YAML files given in Listing 444 and Listing 446 and running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS4.yaml
```

then we receive the respective output given in Listing 443 and Listing 445.

LISTING 443: tabular3.tex using
Listing 444

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 \\
  3 & 4 \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 444: DBS3.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

LISTING 445: tabular3.tex using
Listing 446

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 \\%
  3 & 4 \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 446: DBS4.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    tabular:
      DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

We note that

- Listing 444 specifies `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` for *every* environment (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 42 on page 27); the code following the double back slashes from Listing 438 has been moved to their own line in Listing 443;
- Listing 446 specifies `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` on a *per-name* basis for `tabular` (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 42 on page 27); the first double back slashes from Listing 438 have moved code following them to their own line in Listing 445, having added comment symbols before moving them; the final double back slashes have *not* added a line break as they are at the end of the body within the code block.

6.6.2.3 Double back slash poly-switches for specialBeginEnd

Let's explore the double back slash poly-switches for code blocks within `specialBeginEnd` code blocks (Listing 112 on page 38); we begin with the code within Listing 447.



LISTING 447: special4.tex

```
\< a& =b \\ & =c\\ & =d\\ & =e \>
```

Upon using the YAML settings in Listing 449, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m special4.tex -l DBS5.yaml
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 448.

LISTING 448: special4.tex
using Listing 449

```
\<
  a & =b \\
    & =c \\
    & =d \\
    & =e %
\>
```

LISTING 449: DBS5.yaml

-m

```
specialBeginEnd:
  cmhMath:
    lookForThis: 1
    begin: '\\<'
    end: '\\>'
lookForAlignDelims:
  cmhMath: 1
modifyLineBreaks:
  specialBeginEnd:
    cmhMath:
      DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
      SpecialBodyStartsOnOwnLine: 1
      SpecialEndStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

There are a few things to note:

- in Listing 449 we have specified `cmhMath` within `lookForAlignDelims`; without this, the double back slash poly-switches would be ignored for this code block;
- the `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` poly-switch has controlled the line breaks following the double back slashes;
- the `SpecialEndStartsOnOwnLine` poly-switch has controlled the addition of a comment symbol, followed by a line break, as it is set to a value of 2.

6.6.2.4 Double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments

For clarity, we provide a demonstration of controlling the double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments. We begin with the code in Listing 450.

LISTING 450: mycommand2.tex

```
\mycommand [
  1&2 &3\\ 4&5&6]{
7&8 &9\\ 10&11&12
}
```

Upon using the YAML settings in Listings 452 and 454, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m mycommand2.tex -l DBS6.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m mycommand2.tex -l DBS7.yaml
```

then we receive the output given in Listings 451 and 453.

LISTING 451: mycommand2.tex
using Listing 452

```
\mycommand [
  1 & 2 & 3 %
  \\%
  4 & 5 & 6]{
  7 & 8 & 9 \\ 10&11&12
}
```

LISTING 452: DBS6.yaml

-m

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  mycommand: 1
modifyLineBreaks:
  optionalArguments:
    DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 2
    DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

LISTING 453: mycommand2.tex
using Listing 454

```
\mycommand [
  1&2    &3\\ 4&5&6]{
  7  & 8  & 9  %
  \\%
  10 & 11 & 12
}
```

LISTING 454: DBS7.yaml

-m

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  mycommand: 1
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 2
    DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

6.6.2.5 Double back slash optional square brackets

The pattern matching for the double back slash will also, optionally, allow trailing square brackets that contain a measurement of vertical spacing, for example `\\[3pt]`.

For example, beginning with the code in Listing 455

LISTING 455: pmatrix3.tex

```
\begin{pmatrix}
  1 & 2 \\[2pt] 3 & 4 \\ [ 3 ex] 5&6\\[ 4 pt ] 7 & 8
\end{pmatrix}
```

and running the following command, using Listing 444,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m pmatrix3.tex -l DBS3.yaml
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 456.

LISTING 456: pmatrix3.tex using Listing 444

```
\begin{pmatrix}
  1 & 2 \\[2pt]
  3 & 4 \\ [ 3 ex]
  5 & 6 \\[ 4 pt ]
  7 & 8
\end{pmatrix}
```

You can customise the pattern for the double back slash by exploring the *fine tuning* field detailed in Listing 521 on page 127.

6.6.3 Poly-switches for other code blocks

Rather than repeat the examples shown for the environment code blocks (in Section 6.6.1 on page 95), we choose to detail the poly-switches for all other code blocks in Table 3; note that each and every one of these poly-switches is *off by default*, i.e., set to 0.

Note also that, by design, line breaks involving, `filecontents` and ‘comment-marked’ code blocks (Listing 76 on page 33) can *not* be modified using `latexindent.pl`. However, there are two poly-switches available for verbatim code blocks: environments (Listing 18 on page 22), commands (Listing 19 on page 22) and `specialBeginEnd` (Listing 125 on page 41).

U: 2019-05-05



TABLE 3: Poly-switch mappings for all code-block types

Code block	Sample	Poly-switch mapping
environment	before words♠ \begin{myenv}♥ body of myenv◇ \end{myenv}♣ after words	♠ BeginStartsOnOwnLine ♥ BodyStartsOnOwnLine ◇ EndStartsOnOwnLine ♣ EndFinishesWithLineBreak
ifelsefi	before words♠ \if...♥ body of if/or statement▲ \or▼ body of if/or statement★ \else□ body of else statement◇ \fi♣ after words	♠ IfStartsOnOwnLine ♥ BodyStartsOnOwnLine ▲ OrStartsOnOwnLine ▼ OrFinishesWithLineBreak ★ ElseStartsOnOwnLine □ ElseFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ FiStartsOnOwnLine ♣ FiFinishesWithLineBreak
optionalArguments	...♠ [♥ value before comma★, □ end of body of opt arg◇]♣ ...	♠ LSqBStartsOnOwnLine ⁸ ♥ OptArgBodyStartsOnOwnLine ★ CommaStartsOnOwnLine □ CommaFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ RSqBStartsOnOwnLine ♣ RSqBFinishesWithLineBreak
mandatoryArguments	...♠ {♥ value before comma★, □ end of body of mand arg◇ }♣ ...	♠ LCuBStartsOnOwnLine ⁹ ♥ MandArgBodyStartsOnOwnLine ★ CommaStartsOnOwnLine □ CommaFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ RCuBStartsOnOwnLine ♣ RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak
commands	before words♠ \mycommand♥ (arguments)	♠ CommandStartsOnOwnLine ♥ CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak
namedGroupingBracesBrackets	before words♠ myname♥ (braces/brackets)	♠ NameStartsOnOwnLine ♥ NameFinishesWithLineBreak
keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets	before words♠ key=♥ (braces/brackets)	♠ KeyStartsOnOwnLine • EqualsStartsOnOwnLine ♥ EqualsFinishesWithLineBreak
items	before words♠ \item♥ ...	♠ ItemStartsOnOwnLine ♥ ItemFinishesWithLineBreak
specialBeginEnd	before words♠ \[♥ body of special/middle★ \middle□ body of special/middle ◇ \]♣ after words	♠ SpecialBeginStartsOnOwnLine ♥ SpecialBodyStartsOnOwnLine ★ SpecialMiddleStartsOnOwnLine □ SpecialMiddleFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ SpecialEndStartsOnOwnLine ♣ SpecialEndFinishesWithLineBreak
verbatim	before words♠\begin{verbatim}	♠ VerbatimBeginStartsOnOwnLine

⁸LSqB stands for Left Square Bracket⁹LCuB stands for Left Curly Brace



N: 2019-05-05

body of verbatim \end{verbatim}♣ ♣ VerbatimEndFinishesWithLineBreak
after words

6.6.4 Partnering BodyStartsOnOwnLine with argument-based poly-switches

Some poly-switches need to be partnered together; in particular, when line breaks involving the *first* argument of a code block need to be accounted for using both `BodyStartsOnOwnLine` (or its equivalent, see Table 3 on the preceding page) and `LCuBStartsOnOwnLine` for mandatory arguments, and `LSqBStartsOnOwnLine` for optional arguments.

Let's begin with the code in Listing 457 and the YAML settings in Listing 459; with reference to Table 3 on the previous page, the key `CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak` is an alias for `BodyStartsOnOwnLine`.

LISTING 457: mycommand1.tex

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=mycom-mlb1.yaml mycommand1.tex
```

we obtain Listing 458; note that the *second* mandatory argument beginning brace { has had its leading line break removed, but that the *first* brace has not.

LISTING 458: mycommand1.tex using Listing 459

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 459: mycom-mlb1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  commands:
    CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak: 0
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

Now let's change the YAML file so that it is as in Listing 461; upon running the analogous command to that given above, we obtain Listing 460; both beginning braces { have had their leading line breaks removed.

LISTING 460: mycommand1.tex using Listing 461

```
\mycommand{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 461: mycom-mlb2.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  commands:
    CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

Now let's change the YAML file so that it is as in Listing 463; upon running the analogous command to that given above, we obtain Listing 462.



LISTING 462: mycommand1.tex using Listing 463

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 463: mycom-mlb3.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  commands:
    CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: 1
```

6.6.5 Conflicting poly-switches: sequential code blocks

It is very easy to have conflicting poly-switches; if we use the example from Listing 457 on the preceding page, and consider the YAML settings given in Listing 465. The output from running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=mycom-mlb4.yaml mycommand1.tex
```

is given in Listing 465.

LISTING 464: mycommand1.tex using Listing 465

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 465: mycom-mlb4.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: -1
    RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

Studying Listing 465, we see that the two poly-switches are at opposition with one another:

- on the one hand, `LCuBStartsOnOwnLine` should *not* start on its own line (as poly-switch is set to `-1`);
- on the other hand, `RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak` *should* finish with a line break.

So, which should win the conflict? As demonstrated in Listing 464, it is clear that `LCuBStartsOnOwnLine` won this conflict, and the reason is that *the second argument was processed after the first* – in general, the most recently-processed code block and associated poly-switch takes priority.

We can explore this further by considering the YAML settings in Listing 467; upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=mycom-mlb5.yaml mycommand1.tex
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 466.

LISTING 466: mycommand1.tex using Listing 467

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 467: mycom-mlb5.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak:
      -1
```

As previously, the most-recently-processed code block takes priority – as before, the second (i.e., *last*) argument. Exploring this further, we consider the YAML settings in Listing 469, which give associated output in Listing 468.



LISTING 468: mycommand1.tex using Listing 469

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}%
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 469: mycom-mlb6.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: 2
    RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak:
      -1
```

Note that a % has been added to the trailing first }; this is because:

- while processing the *first* argument, the trailing line break has been removed (RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak set to -1);
- while processing the *second* argument, latexindent.pl finds that it does *not* begin on its own line, and so because LCuBStartsOnOwnLine is set to 2, it adds a comment, followed by a line break.

6.6.6 Conflicting poly-switches: nested code blocks

Now let's consider an example when nested code blocks have conflicting poly-switches; we'll use the code in Listing 470, noting that it contains nested environments.

LISTING 470: nested-env.tex

```
\begin{one}
one text
\begin{two}
two text
\end{two}
\end{one}
```

Let's use the YAML settings given in Listing 472, which upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=nested-env-mlb1.yaml nested-env.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 471.

LISTING 471: nested-env.tex using Listing 472

```
\begin{one}
  one text
  \begin{two}
    two text\end{two}\end{one}
```

LISTING 472: nested-env-mlb1.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: -1
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

In Listing 471, let's first of all note that both environments have received the appropriate (default) indentation; secondly, note that the poly-switch EndStartsOnOwnLine appears to have won the conflict, as \end{one} has had its leading line break removed.

To understand it, let's talk about the three basic phases of latexindent.pl:

1. Phase 1: packing, in which code blocks are replaced with unique ids, working from *the inside to the outside*, and then sequentially – for example, in Listing 470, the two environment is found *before* the one environment; if the -m switch is active, then during this phase:
 - line breaks at the beginning of the body can be added (if BodyStartsOnOwnLine is 1 or 2) or removed (if BodyStartsOnOwnLine is -1);
 - line breaks at the end of the body can be added (if EndStartsOnOwnLine is 1 or 2) or removed (if EndStartsOnOwnLine is -1);



- line breaks after the end statement can be added (if `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` is 1 or 2).
2. Phase 2: indentation, in which white space is added to the begin, body, and end statements;
 3. Phase 3: unpacking, in which unique ids are replaced by their *indented* code blocks; if the `-m` switch is active, then during this phase,
 - line breaks before begin statements can be added or removed (depending upon `BeginStartsOnOwnLine`);
 - line breaks after *end* statements can be removed but *NOT* added (see `EndFinishesWithLineBreak`).

With reference to Listing 471, this means that during Phase 1:

- the `two` environment is found first, and the line break ahead of the `\end{two}` statement is removed because `EndStartsOnOwnLine` is set to `-1`. Importantly, because, *at this stage*, `\end{two}` *does* finish with a line break, `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` causes no action.
- next, the `one` environment is found; the line break ahead of `\end{one}` is removed because `EndStartsOnOwnLine` is set to `-1`.

The indentation is done in Phase 2; in Phase 3 *there is no option to add a line break after the end statements*. We can justify this by remembering that during Phase 3, the `one` environment will be found and processed first, followed by the `two` environment. If the `two` environment were to add a line break after the `\end{two}` statement, then `latexindent.pl` would have no way of knowing how much indentation to add to the subsequent text (in this case, `\end{one}`).

We can explore this further using the poly-switches in Listing 474; upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=nested-env-mlb2.yaml nested-env.tex
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 473.

LISTING 473: `nested-env.tex` using Listing 474

```
\begin{one}
  one text
  \begin{two}
    two text
  \end{two}\end{one}
```

LISTING 474: `nested-env-mlb2.yaml`

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
```

During Phase 1:

- the `two` environment is found first, and the line break ahead of the `\end{two}` statement is not changed because `EndStartsOnOwnLine` is set to 1. Importantly, because, *at this stage*, `\end{two}` *does* finish with a line break, `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` causes no action.
- next, the `one` environment is found; the line break ahead of `\end{one}` is already present, and no action is needed.

The indentation is done in Phase 2, and then in Phase 3, the `one` environment is found and processed first, followed by the `two` environment. *At this stage*, the `two` environment finds `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` is `-1`, so it removes the trailing line break; remember, at this point, `latexindent.pl` has completely finished with the `one` environment.

SECTION 7



The -r, -rv and -rr switches

N: 2019-07-13

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to perform replacements/substitutions on your file by using any of the `-r`, `-rv` or `-rr` switches:

- the `-r` switch will perform indentation and replacements, not respecting verbatim code blocks;
- the `-rv` switch will perform indentation and replacements, and *will* respect verbatim code blocks;
- the `-rr` switch will *not* perform indentation, and will perform replacements not respecting verbatim code blocks.

We will demonstrate each of the `-r`, `-rv` and `-rr` switches, but a summary is given in Table 4.

TABLE 4: The replacement mode switches

switch	indentation?	respect verbatim?
<code>-r</code>	✓	✗
<code>-rv</code>	✓	✓
<code>-rr</code>	✗	✗

The default value of the `replacements` field is shown in Listing 475; as with all of the other fields, you are encouraged to customise and change this as you see fit. The options in this field will *only* be considered if the `-r`, `-rv` or `-rr` switches are active; when discussing YAML settings related to the replacement-mode switches, we will use the style given in Listing 475.

LISTING 475: replacements -r

```
619 replacements:
620 -
621   amalgamate: 1
622 -
623   this: 'latexindent.pl'
624   that: 'pl.latexindent'
625   lookForThis: 0
626   when: before
```

The first entry within the `replacements` field is `amalgamate`, and is *optional*; by default it is set to 1, so that replacements will be amalgamated from each settings file that you specify. As you'll see in the demonstrations that follow, there is no need to specify this field.

You'll notice that, by default, there is only *one* entry in the `replacements` field, but it can take as many entries as you would like; each one needs to begin with a `-` on its own line.

7.1 Introduction to replacements

Let's explore the action of the default settings, and then we'll demonstrate the feature with further examples. With reference to Listing 475, the default action will replace every instance of the text `latexindent.pl` with `pl.latexindent`.

Beginning with the code in Listing 476 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r replace1.tex
```




gives the output given in Listing 477.

LISTING 476: replace1.tex	LISTING 477: replace1.tex default
Before text, latexindent.pl, after text.	Before text, latexindent.pl, after text.

If we don't wish to perform this replacement, then we can tweak the default settings of Listing 475 on the previous page by changing `lookForThis` to 0; we perform this action in Listing 479, and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r replace1.tex -l=replace1.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 478.

LISTING 478: replace1.tex using Listing 479	LISTING 479: replace1.yaml -r
Before text, latexindent.pl, after text.	replacements: - amalgamate: 0 - this: latexindent.pl that: pl.latexindent lookForThis: 0

Note that in Listing 479 we have specified `amalgamate` as 0 so that the default replacements are overwritten.

We haven't yet discussed the `when` field; don't worry, we'll get to it as part of the discussion in what follows.

7.2 The two types of replacements

There are two types of replacements:

1. *string*-based replacements, which replace the string in *this* with the string in *that*. If you specify `this` and you do not specify `that`, then the `that` field will be assumed to be empty.
2. *regex*-based replacements, which use the `substitution` field.

We will demonstrate both in the examples that follow.

`latexindent.pl` chooses which type of replacement to make based on which fields have been specified; if the `this` field is specified, then it will make *string*-based replacements, regardless of if `substitution` is present or not.

7.3 Examples of replacements

Example 1 We begin with code given in Listing 480

LISTING 480: colsep.tex
<pre>\begin{env} 1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt 4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt \end{env}</pre>

Let's assume that our goal is to remove both of the `arraycolsep` statements; we can achieve this in a few different ways.

Using the YAML in Listing 482, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=colsep.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 481.



LISTING 481: colsep.tex using Listing 480

```
\begin{env}
  1 2 3
  4 5 6
\end{env}
```

LISTING 482: colsep.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: \arraycolsep=3pt
-
  this: \arraycolsep=5pt
```

Note that in Listing 482, we have specified *two* separate fields, each with their own *this* field; furthermore, for both of the separate fields, we have not specified *that*, so the *that* field is assumed to be blank by `latexindent.pl`;

We can make the YAML in Listing 482 more concise by exploring the substitution field. Using the settings in Listing 484 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=colsep1.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 483.

LISTING 483: colsep.tex using Listing 484

```
\begin{env}
  1 2 3
  4 5 6
\end{env}
```

LISTING 484: colsep1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: s/\\arraycolsep=\d+pt//sg
```

The code given in Listing 484 is an example of a *regular expression*, which we may abbreviate to *regex* in what follows. This manual is not intended to be a tutorial on regular expressions; you might like to read, for example, [12] for a detailed covering of the topic. With reference to Listing 484, we do note the following:

- the general form of the substitution field is `s/regex/replacement/modifiers`. You can place any regular expression you like within this;
- we have ‘escaped’ the backslash by using `\\`
- we have used `\d+` to represent *at least* one digit
- the *s* modifier (in the `sg` at the end of the line) instructs `latexindent.pl` to treat your file as one single line;
- the *g* modifier (in the `sg` at the end of the line) instructs `latexindent.pl` to make the substitution *globally* throughout your file; you might try removing the *g* modifier from Listing 484 and observing the difference in output.

You might like to see <https://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html#Modifiers> for details of modifiers; in general, I recommend starting with the *sg* modifiers for this feature.

Example 2 We’ll keep working with the file in Listing 480 on the preceding page for this example.

Using the YAML in Listing 486, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=multi-line.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 485.



LISTING 485: colsep.tex using
Listing 486

```
multi-line!
```

LISTING 486: multi-line.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: |-
    \begin{env}
    1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt
    4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt
    \end{env}
  that: 'multi-line!'
```

With reference to Listing 486, we have specified a *multi-line* version of this by employing the *literal* YAML style `|-`. See, for example, <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/3790454/in-yaml-how-do-i-break-a-string-over-multiple-lines> for further options, all of which can be used in your YAML file.

This is a natural point to explore the `when` field, specified in Listing 475 on page 112. This field can take two values: *before* and *after*, which respectively instruct `latexindent.pl` to perform the replacements *before* indentation or *after* it. The default value is *before*.

Using the YAML in Listing 488, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=multi-line1.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 487.

LISTING 487: colsep.tex using
Listing 488

```
\begin{env}
  1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt
  4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt
\end{env}
```

LISTING 488: multi-line1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: |-
    \begin{env}
    1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt
    4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt
    \end{env}
  that: 'multi-line!'
  when: after
```

We note that, because we have specified `when: after`, that `latexindent.pl` has not found the string specified in Listing 488 within the file in Listing 480 on page 113. As it has looked for the string within Listing 488 *after* the indentation has been performed. After indentation, the string as written in Listing 488 is no longer part of the file, and has therefore not been replaced.

As a final note on this example, if you use the `-rr` switch, as follows,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rr colsep.tex -l=multi-line1.yaml
```

then the `when` field is ignored, no indentation is done, and the output is as in Listing 485.

Example 3 An important part of the substitution routine is in *capture groups*.

Assuming that we start with the code in Listing 489, let's assume that our goal is to replace each occurrence of `$$...$$` with `\begin{equation*}...\end{equation*}`. This example is partly motivated by [tex stackexchange question 242150](#).



LISTING 489: displaymath.tex

```
before text $$a^2+b^2=4$$ and $$c^2$$

$$
d^2+e^2 = f^2
$$
and also $$ g^2
$$ and some inline math: $h^2$
```

We use the settings in Listing 491 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r displaymath.tex -l=displaymath1.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 490.

LISTING 490: displaymath.tex using Listing 491

```
before text \begin{equation*}a^2+b^2=4\end{equation*}
and \begin{equation*}c^2\end{equation*}

\begin{equation*}
d^2+e^2 = f^2
\end{equation*}
and also \begin{equation*} g^2
\end{equation*} and some inline math: $h^2$
```

LISTING 491: displaymath1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: |-
    s/\$\$
    (.*?)
    \$\$/\begin{equation*}$1\end{equation*}/sgx
```

A few notes about Listing 491:

1. we have used the `x` modifier, which allows us to have white space within the regex;
2. we have used a capture group, `(.*?)` which captures the content between the `$$...$$` into the special variable, `$1`;
3. we have used the content of the capture group, `$1`, in the replacement text.

See <https://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html#Capture-groups> for a discussion of capture groups.

The features of the replacement switches can, of course, be combined with others from the toolkit of `latexindent.pl`. For example, we can combine the poly-switches of Section 6.6 on page 95, which we do in Listing 493; upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r -m displaymath.tex -l=displaymath1.yaml,equation.yaml
```

then we receive the output in Listing 492.



LISTING 492:
displaymath.tex using
Listings 491 and 493

```
before text%
\begin{equation*}%
  a^2+b^2=4%
\end{equation*}%
and%
\begin{equation*}%
  c^2%
\end{equation*}

\begin{equation*}
  d^2+e^2 = f^2
\end{equation*}
and also%
\begin{equation*}%
  g^2
\end{equation*}%
and some inline math: $h^2$
```

LISTING 493: equation.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    equation*:
      BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 2
      BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 2
      EndStartsOnOwnLine: 2
      EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

Example 4 This example is motivated by [tex stackexchange question 490086](#). We begin with the code in Listing 494.

LISTING 494: phrase.tex

phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100
phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100
phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100
phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100

Our goal is to make the spacing uniform between the phrases. To achieve this, we employ the settings in Listing 496, and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r phrase.tex -l=hspace.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 495.

LISTING 495: phrase.tex using
Listing 496

```
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
```

LISTING 496: hspace.yaml

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: s/\h+/ /sg
```

The `\h+` setting in Listing 496 say to replace *at least one horizontal space* with a single space.

Example 5 We begin with the code in Listing 497.



LISTING 497: references.tex

```
equation \eqref{eq:aa} and Figure \ref{fig:bb}
and table~\ref{tab:cc}
```

Our goal is to change each reference so that both the text and the reference are contained within one hyperlink. We achieve this by employing Listing 499 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r references.tex -l=reference.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 498.

LISTING 498: references.tex using Listing 499

```
\hyperref{equation \ref*{eq:aa}} and \hyperref{Figure \ref*{fig:bb}}
and \hyperref{table \ref*{tab:cc}}
```

LISTING 499: reference.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: |-
    s/(
      equation
    |
      table
    |
      figure
    |
      section
    )
    (\h|~)*
    \\(?:eq)?
    ref\{((.*?)\)}\\hyperref{$1 \ref*{$3}}/sgxi
```

Referencing Listing 499, the | means *or*, we have used *capture groups*, together with an example of an *optional pattern*, (?:eq)?.

Example 6 Let's explore the three replacement mode switches (see Table 4 on page 112) in the context of an example that contains a verbatim code block, Listing 500; we will use the settings in Listing 501.

LISTING 500: verb1.tex

```
\begin{myenv}
body of verbatim
\end{myenv}
some verbatim
\begin{verbatim}
  body
    of
  verbatim
text
\end{verbatim}
text
```

LISTING 501: verbatim1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: 'body'
  that: 'head'
```

Upon running the following commands,



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r verb1.tex -l=verbatim1.yaml -o+=mod1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rv verb1.tex -l=verbatim1.yaml -o+=-rv-mod1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rr verb1.tex -l=verbatim1.yaml -o+=-rr-mod1
```

we receive the respective output in Listings 502 to 504

LISTING 502: verb1-mod1.tex	LISTING 503: verb1-rv-mod1.tex	LISTING 504: verb1-rr-mod1.tex
<pre>\begin{myenv} head of verbatim \end{myenv} some verbatim \begin{verbatim} head of verbatim text \end{verbatim} text</pre>	<pre>\begin{myenv} head of verbatim \end{myenv} some verbatim \begin{verbatim} body of verbatim text \end{verbatim} text</pre>	<pre>\begin{myenv} head of verbatim \end{myenv} some verbatim \begin{verbatim} head of verbatim text \end{verbatim} text</pre>

We note that:

1. in Listing 502 indentation has been performed, and that the replacements specified in Listing 501 have been performed, even within the verbatim code block;
2. in Listing 503 indentation has been performed, but that the replacements have *not* been performed within the verbatim environment, because the *rv* switch is active;
3. in Listing 504 indentation has *not* been performed, but that replacements have been performed, not respecting the verbatim code block.

See the summary within Table 4 on page 112.

Example 7 Let's explore the `amalgamate` field from Listing 475 on page 112 in the context of the file specified in Listing 505.

LISTING 505: amalg1.tex

one two three

Let's consider the YAML files given in Listings 506 to 508.

LISTING 506: amalg1-yaml.yaml	LISTING 507: amalg2-yaml.yaml	LISTING 508: amalg3-yaml.yaml
<pre>replacements: - this: one that: 1</pre>	<pre>replacements: - this: two that: 2</pre>	<pre>replacements: - amalgamate: 0 - this: three that: 3</pre>

Upon running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r amalg1.tex -l=amalg1-yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r amalg1.tex -l=amalg1-yaml,amalg2-yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r amalg1.tex -l=amalg1-yaml,amalg2-yaml,amalg3-yaml
```

we receive the respective output in Listings 509 to 511.



LISTING 509: <code>amalg1.tex</code> using Listing 506	LISTING 510: <code>amalg1.tex</code> using Listings 506 and 507	LISTING 511: <code>amalg1.tex</code> using Listings 506 to 508
1 two three	1 2 three	one two 3

We note that:

1. in Listing 509 the replacements from Listing 506 have been used;
2. in Listing 510 the replacements from Listings 506 and 507 have *both* been used, because the default value of `amalgamate` is 1;
3. in Listing 511 *only* the replacements from Listing 508 have been used, because the value of `amalgamate` has been set to 0.

SECTION 8



The `-lines` switch

N: 2021-09-16

`latexindent.pl` can operate on a *selection* of lines of the file using the `-lines` or `-n` switch.

The basic syntax is `-lines MIN-MAX`, so for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-7 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -n 3-7 myfile.tex
```

will only operate upon lines 3 to 7 in `myfile.tex`. All of the other lines will *not* be operated upon by `latexindent.pl`.

The options for the lines switch are:

- line range, as in `-lines 3-7`
- single line, as in `-lines 5`
- multiple line ranges separated by commas, as in `-lines 3-5,8-10`
- negated line ranges, as in `-lines !3-5` which translates to `-lines 1-2,6-N`, where N is the number of lines in your file.

We demonstrate this feature, and the available variations in what follows. We will use the file in Listing 512.

LISTING 512: `myfile.tex`

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11   \end{two}
12 \end{one}
```

Example 8 We demonstrate the basic usage using the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-7 myfile.tex -o=+-mod1
```

which instructs `latexindent.pl` to only operate on lines 3 to 7; the output is given in Listing 513.



LISTING 513: myfile-mod1.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3 first block, first line
4 first block, second line
5 first block, third line
6 \begin{two}
7 second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11 \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```

The following two calls to `latexindent.pl` are equivalent

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-7 myfile.tex -o=+-mod1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 7-3 myfile.tex -o=+-mod1

```

as `latexindent.pl` performs a check to put the lowest number first.

Example 9 You can call the lines switch with only *one number* and in which case only that line will be operated upon. For example

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 5 myfile.tex -o=+-mod2

```

instructs `latexindent.pl` to only operate on line 5; the output is given in Listing 514.

LISTING 514: myfile-mod2.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3 first block, first line
4 first block, second line
5 first block, third line
6 \begin{two}
7 second block, first line
8 second block, second line
9 second block, third line
10 second block, fourth line
11 \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```

The following two calls are equivalent:

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 5 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 5-5 myfile.tex

```

Example 10 If you specify a value outside of the line range of the file then `latexindent.pl` will ignore the lines argument, detail as such in the log file, and proceed to operate on the entire file.

For example, in the following call

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 11-13 myfile.tex

```



latexindent.pl will ignore the lines argument, and *operate on the entire file* because Listing 512 only has 12 lines.

Similarly, in the call

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines -1-3 myfile.tex
```

latexindent.pl will ignore the lines argument, and *operate on the entire file* because we assume that negatively numbered lines in a file do not exist.

Example 11 You can specify *multiple line ranges* as in the following

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-5,8-10 myfile.tex -o=+-mod3
```

which instructs latexindent.pl to operate upon lines 3 to 5 and lines 8 to 10; the output is given in Listing 515.

LISTING 515: myfile-mod3.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3 first block, first line
4 first block, second line
5 first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8 second block, second line
9 second block, third line
10 second block, fourth line
11   \end{two}
12 \end{one}
```

The following calls to latexindent.pl are all equivalent

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-5,8-10 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 8-10,3-5 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 10-8,3-5 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 10-8,5-3 myfile.tex
```

as latexindent.pl performs a check to put the lowest line ranges first, and within each line range, it puts the lowest number first.

Example 12 There's no limit to the number of line ranges that you can specify, they just need to be separated by commas. For example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-2,4-5,9-10,12 myfile.tex -o=+-mod4
```

has four line ranges: lines 1 to 2, lines 4 to 5, lines 9 to 10 and line 12. The output is given in Listing 516.



LISTING 516: myfile-mod4.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3     first block, first line
4     first block, second line
5     first block, third line
6     \begin{two}
7         second block, first line
8         second block, second line
9         second block, third line
10        second block, fourth line
11        \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```

As previously, the ordering does not matter, and the following calls to `latexindent.pl` are all equivalent

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-2,4-5,9-10,12 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 2-1,4-5,9-10,12 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 4-5,1-2,9-10,12 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 12,4-5,1-2,9-10 myfile.tex

```

as `latexindent.pl` performs a check to put the lowest line ranges first, and within each line range, it puts the lowest number first.

Example 13 You can specify *negated line ranges* by using `!` as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !5-7 myfile.tex -o+=-mod5
```

which instructs `latexindent.pl` to operate upon all of the lines *except* lines 5 to 7.

In other words, `latexindent.pl` *will* operate on lines 1 to 4, and 8 to 12, so the following two calls are equivalent:

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !5-7 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-4,8-12 myfile.tex

```

The output is given in Listing 517.

LISTING 517: myfile-mod5.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3     first block, first line
4     first block, second line
5     first block, third line
6     \begin{two}
7         second block, first line
8         second block, second line
9         second block, third line
10        second block, fourth line
11        \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```



Example 14 You can specify *multiple negated line ranges* such as

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !5-7,!9-10 myfile.tex -o=+-mod6
```

which is equivalent to:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-4,8,11-12 myfile.tex -o=+-mod6
```

The output is given in Listing 518.

LISTING 518: myfile-mod6.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11  \end{two}
12 \end{one}
```

Example 15 If you specify a line range with anything other than an integer, then `latexindent.pl` will ignore the lines argument, and *operate on the entire file*.

Sample calls that result in the lines argument being ignored include the following:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-x myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !y-3 myfile.tex
```

Example 16 We can, of course, use the lines switch in combination with other switches.

For example, let's use with the file in Listing 519.

LISTING 519: myfile1.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two} body \end{two}
7 \end{one}
```

We can demonstrate interaction with the `-m` switch (see Section 6 on page 67); in particular, if we use Listing 414 on page 99, Listing 398 on page 98 and Listing 399 on page 98 and run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 6 myfile1.tex -o=+-mod1 -m -l env-mlb2,env-mlb7,env-mlb8 -o=+-mod1
```

then we receive the output in Listing 520.



LISTING 520: myfile1-mod1.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6 \begin{two}
7   body
8 \end{two}
9 \end{one}
```

SECTION 9



Fine tuning

N: 2019-07-13

`latexindent.pl` operates by looking for the code blocks detailed in Table 2 on page 45. The fine tuning of the details of such code blocks is controlled by the `fineTuning` field, detailed in Listing 521.

This field is for those that would like to peek under the bonnet/hood and make some fine tuning to `latexindent.pl`'s operating.



Warning!

Making changes to the fine tuning may have significant consequences for your indentation scheme, proceed with caution!

LISTING 521: `fineTuning`

```
630 fineTuning:
631   environments:
632     name: '[a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\]+'
633   ifElseFi:
634     name: '(!@?if[a-zA-Z@]*?\\{)@?if[a-zA-Z@]*?'
635   commands:
636     name: '[+a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\:]+?'
637   items:
638     canBeFollowedBy: '(?:\\[[^]]*?\\]|(?:<[>]*?>))'
639   keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets:
640     name: '[a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\.\\: \\#-]+[a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\.\\h\\{\\}\\#-]*?'
641     follow: '(?:(<![\\]\\{\\}|(?:(<![\\]\\{\\}|'
642   namedGroupingBracesBrackets:
643     name: '[0-9\\.a-zA-Z@* < > + ? ]'
644     follow: '\\h|\\R|\\{\\|\\[\\|\\$\\|\\)|\\('
645   UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets:
646     follow: '\\{\\|\\[\\|,|&\\|\\)|\\(\\|\\$'
647   arguments:
648     before: '(?:#\\d\\h* ; ? , ? \\/?)+|\\< . * ? \\>'
649     between: '_|\\^|\\*'
650   trailingComments:
651     notPreceededBy: '(<![\\]\\{\\}'
652   modifyLineBreaks:
653     betterFullStop:
654       '(?:\\.\\) (!\\h*[a-z]))|(?:(<!(?: (?:e\\.g) | (?:E\\.g) | (?:i\\.e) | (?:I\\.e) | (?:etc))))\\. (?! (?: [a-z] | [A-Z] | \\- | \\~ | \\, | [0-9]))'
655     doubleBackSlash: '\\\\\\(?:\\h*\\[\\h*\\d+\\h*[a-zA-Z]+\\h*\\])?'
656     comma: ','
```

The fields given in Listing 521 are all *regular expressions*. This manual is not intended to be a tutorial on regular expressions; you might like to read, for example, [12] for a detailed covering of the topic.

We make the following comments with reference to Listing 521:

1. the `environments:name` field details that the *name* of an environment can contain:
 - (a) a-z lower case letters
 - (b) A-Z upper case letters
 - (c) @ the @ 'letter'



- (d) * stars
- (e) 0–9 numbers
- (f) _ underscores
- (g) \ backslashes

The + at the end means *at least one* of the above characters.

2. the `ifElseFi:name` field:

- (a) @? means that it *can possibly* begin with @
- (b) followed by `if`
- (c) followed by 0 or more characters from a–z, A–Z and @
- (d) the ? the end means *non-greedy*, which means ‘stop the match as soon as possible’

3. the `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets` contains some interesting syntax:

- (a) | means ‘or’
- (b) (?:(<!\)\)\{) the (?:...) uses a *non-capturing* group – you don’t necessarily need to worry about what this means, but just know that for the `fineTuning` feature you should only ever use *non-capturing* groups, and *not* capturing groups, which are simply (...)
- (c) (<!\)\)\{) means a { but it can *not* be immediately preceded by a \

4. in the `arguments:before` field

- (a) \d\h* means a digit (i.e. a number), followed by 0 or more horizontal spaces
- (b) ;?,? means *possibly* a semi-colon, and possibly a comma
- (c) \<.*?\> is designed for ‘beamer’-type commands; the .*? means anything in between <...>

5. the `modifyLineBreaks` field refers to fine tuning settings detailed in Section 6 on page 67. In particular:

- (a) `betterFullStop` is in relation to the one sentence per line routine, detailed in Section 6.5 on page 87
- (b) `doubleBackSlash` is in relation to the `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` and `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` polswitches surrounding double back slashes, see Section 6.6.2 on page 103
- (c) `comma` is in relation to the `CommaStartsOnOwnLine` and `CommaFinishesWithLineBreak` polswitches surrounding commas in optional and mandatory arguments; see Table 3 on page 107

It is not obvious from Listing 521, but each of the `follow`, `before` and `between` fields allow trailing comments, line breaks, and horizontal spaces between each character.



Warning!

For the `fineTuning` feature you should only ever use *non-capturing* groups, such as (?:...) and *not* capturing groups, which are (...)

Example 17 As a demonstration, consider the file given in Listing 522, together with its default output using the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning1.tex
```

is given in Listing 523.



LISTING 522: finetuning1.tex

```
\mycommand{
  \rule{G -> +H[-G]CL}
  \rule{H -> -G[+H]CL}
  \rule{g -> +h[-g]cL}
  \rule{h -> -g[+h]cL}
}
```

LISTING 523: finetuning1.tex default

```
\mycommand{
  \rule{G -> +H[-G]CL}
  \rule{H -> -G[+H]CL}
  \rule{g -> +h[-g]cL}
  \rule{h -> -g[+h]cL}
}
```

It's clear from Listing 523 that the indentation scheme has not worked as expected. We can *fine tune* the indentation scheme by employing the settings given in Listing 525 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning1.tex -l=fine-tuning1.yaml
```

and the associated (desired) output is given in Listing 524.

LISTING 524: finetuning1.tex using Listing 525

```
\mycommand{
  \rule{G -> +H[-G]CL}
  \rule{H -> -G[+H]CL}
  \rule{g -> +h[-g]cL}
  \rule{h -> -g[+h]cL}
}
```

LISTING 525: finetuning1.yaml

```
fineTuning:
  arguments:
    between:
      '_|\^|\*|\-\>|\-\|\\+|h|H|g|G'
```

Example 18 Let's have another demonstration; consider the file given in Listing 526, together with its default output using the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning2.tex
```

is given in Listing 527.

LISTING 526: finetuning2.tex

```
@misc{ wikilatex,
author = "{Wikipedia contributors}",
title = "LaTeX --- {Wikipedia}{,}",
note = "[Online; accessed 3-March-2020]"
}
```

LISTING 527: finetuning2.tex default

```
@misc{ wikilatex,
author = "{Wikipedia contributors}",
title = "LaTeX --- {Wikipedia}{,}",
note = "[Online; accessed 3-March-2020]"
}
```

It's clear from Listing 527 that the indentation scheme has not worked as expected. We can *fine tune* the indentation scheme by employing the settings given in Listing 529 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning2.tex -l=fine-tuning2.yaml
```

and the associated (desired) output is given in Listing 528.



LISTING 528: finetuning2.tex using Listing 529

```
@misc{ wikilatem,
  author = "{Wikipedia contributors}",
  title = "LaTeX --- {Wikipedia}{,}",
  note = "[Online; accessed 3-March-2020]"
}
```

LISTING 529: finetuning2.yaml

```
fineTuning:
  NamedGroupingBracesBrackets:
    follow: '\h\|R\|{\|\\$\\|\\(|"'
  UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets:
    follow: '\{\\[|,|&\\|\\(|\\$|"'
  arguments:
    between: '_|\\^|\\*|---'
```

In particular, note that the settings in Listing 529 specify that `NamedGroupingBracesBrackets` and `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets` can follow " and that we allow --- between arguments.

Example 19 You can tweak the `fineTuning` using the `-y` switch, but to be sure to use quotes appropriately. For example, starting with the code in Listing 530 and running the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m
-y='modifyLineBreaks:oneSentencePerLine:manipulateSentences:␣1,␣
modifyLineBreaks:oneSentencePerLine:sentencesBeginWith:a-z:␣1,␣
fineTuning:modifyLineBreaks:betterFullStop:␣
"(?:\\. |;|:(?![a-z]))|(?:(<!(?:e\\.g|(?i\\.e|(?etc))))\\. (?!(?:[a-z] | [A-Z] |
issue-243.tex -o=+-mod1
```

gives the output shown in Listing 531.

LISTING 530: finetuning3.tex

```
We go; you see: this sentence \cite{tex:stackexchange} finishes here.
```

LISTING 531: finetuning3.tex using -y switch

```
We go;
you see:
this sentence \cite{tex:stackexchange} finishes here.
```

Example 20 We can tweak the `fineTuning` for how trailing comments are classified. For motivation, let's consider the code given in Listing 532

LISTING 532: finetuning4.tex

```
some before text
\href{Handbook%20for%30Spoken%40document.pdf}{my document}
some after text
```

We will compare the settings given in Listings 533 and 534.

LISTING 533: href1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 80
    all: 1
  perCodeBlockBasis: 1
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    all: 1
```

LISTING 534: href2.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 80
    all: 1
  perCodeBlockBasis: 1
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    all: 1

fineTuning:
  trailingComments:
    notPrecededBy:
      '(?:(<!(Handbook)(?!for)(?!Spoken))'
```



Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m finetuning4.tex -o=+-mod1 -l=href1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m finetuning4.tex -o=+-mod2 -l=href2
```

we receive the respective output in Listings 535 and 536.

LISTING 535: finetuning4.tex using Listing 533

```
some before text \href{Handbook some after text%20for%30Spoken%40document.pdf}{my document}
```

LISTING 536: finetuning4.tex using Listing 534

```
some before text \href{Handbook%20for%30Spoken%40document.pdf}{my document} some after text
```

We note that in:

- Listing 535 the trailing comments are assumed to be everything following the first comment symbol, which has meant that everything following it has been moved to the end of the line; this is undesirable, clearly!
- Listing 536 has fine-tuned the trailing comment matching, and says that % cannot be immediately preceded by the words ‘Handbook’, ‘for’ or ‘Spoken’, which means that none of the % symbols have been treated as trailing comments, and the output is desirable.

Another approach to this situation, which does not use fineTuning, is to use noIndentBlock which we discussed in Listing 24 on page 23; using the settings in Listing 537 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m finetuning4.tex -o=+-mod3 -l=href3
```

then we receive the same output given in Listing 536; see also paragraphsStopAt in Listing 319 on page 82.

LISTING 537: href3.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 80
    all: 1
    perCodeBlockBasis: 1
  removeParagraphLineBreaks:
    all: 1
    paragraphsStopAt:
      verbatim: 0

noIndentBlock:
  href:
    begin: '\\href\[~]*?\}\{'
    body: '[~]*?'
    end: '\}'
```

With reference to the body field in Listing 537, we note that the body field can be interpreted as: the fewest number of zero or more characters that are not right braces. This is an example of character class.

Example 21 We can use the fineTuning field to assist in the formatting of bibliography files.

Starting with the file in Listing 538 and running the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib1.tex -o=+-mod1
```

gives the output in Listing 539.

LISTING 538: bib1.bib

```
@online{paulo,
  title="arararule,indent.yaml",
  author="PauloCereda",
  date={2013-05-23},
  urldate={2021-03-19},
  keywords={contributor},}
```

LISTING 539: bib1-mod1.bib

```
@online{paulo,
  title="arararule,indent.yaml",
  author="PauloCereda",
  date={2013-05-23},
  urldate={2021-03-19},
  keywords={contributor},}
```

Let's assume that we would like to format the output so as to align the = symbols. Using the settings in Listing 541 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib1.bib -l bibsettings1.yaml -o=+-mod2
```

gives the output in Listing 540.

LISTING 540: bib1.bib using Listing 541

```
@online{paulo,
  title    = "arararule,indent.yaml",
  author   = "PauloCereda",
  date     = {2013-05-23},
  urldate  = {2021-03-19},
  keywords = {contributor},}
```

LISTING 541: bibsettings1.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  online:
    delimiterRegex: '(=)'

fineTuning:
  keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets:
    follow:
      '(?:(<!\)\)\{)|(?:(<!\)\)\[)'
  UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets:
    follow: '\{|\[|,|&|\)|\<|\$|=
```

Some notes about Listing 541:

- we have populated the lookForAlignDelims field with the online command, and have used the delimiterRegex, discussed in Section 5.5.4 on page 35;
- we have tweaked the keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets code block so that it will *not* be found following a comma; this means that, in contrast to the default behaviour, the lines such as date={2013-05-23}, will *not* be treated as key-equals-value braces;
- the adjustment to keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets necessitates the associated change to the UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets field so that they will be searched for following = symbols.

Example 22 We can build upon Listing 541 for slightly more complicated bibliography files.

Starting with the file in Listing 542 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib2.bib -l bibsettings1.yaml -o=+-mod1
```

gives the output in Listing 543.



LISTING 542: bib2.bib

```
@online{cmh:videodemo,
title="Videodemonstrationofpl.latexindentonyoutube",
url="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload=10",
urldate={2017-02-21},
}
```

LISTING 543: bib2-mod1.bib

```
@online{cmh:videodemo,
  title   = "Videodemonstrationofpl.latexindentonyoutube",
  url     = "https://www.youtube.com/watch?v           = wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload = 10",
  urldate = {2017-02-21},
}
```

The output in Listing 543 is not ideal, as the = symbol within the url field has been incorrectly used as an alignment delimiter.

We address this by tweaking the `delimiterRegEx` field in Listing 544.

LISTING 544: bibsettings2.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  online:
    delimiterRegEx: '(?!v)(?!spfreload)(=)'
```

Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib2.bib -l bibsettings1.yaml,bibsettings2.yaml -o=+-mod2
```

we receive the *desired* output in Listing 545.

LISTING 545: bib2-mod2.bib

```
@online{cmh:videodemo,
  title   = "Videodemonstrationofpl.latexindentonyoutube",
  url     = "https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload=10",
  urldate = {2017-02-21},
}
```

With reference to Listing 544 we note that the `delimiterRegEx` has been adjusted so that = symbols are used as the delimiter, but only when they are *not preceded* by either `v` or `spfreload`.

SECTION 10



Conclusions and known limitations

There are a number of known limitations of the script, and almost certainly quite a few that are *unknown*!

For example, with reference to the multicolumn alignment routine in Listing 52 on page 29, when working with code blocks in which multicolumn commands overlap, the algorithm can fail.

Another limitation is to do with efficiency, particularly when the `-m` switch is active, as this adds many checks and processes. The current implementation relies upon finding and storing *every* code block (see the discussion on page 110); I hope that, in a future version, only *nested* code blocks will need to be stored in the ‘packing’ phase, and that this will improve the efficiency of the script.

U: 2019-07-13

You can run `latexindent` on any file; if you don’t specify an extension, then the extensions that you specify in `fileExtensionPreference` (see Listing 16 on page 20) will be consulted. If you find a case in which the script struggles, please feel free to report it at [13], and in the meantime, consider using a `noIndentBlock` (see page 23).

I hope that this script is useful to some; if you find an example where the script does not behave as you think it should, the best way to contact me is to report an issue on [13]; otherwise, feel free to find me on the <http://tex.stackexchange.com/users/6621/cmhughes>.

SECTION 11



References

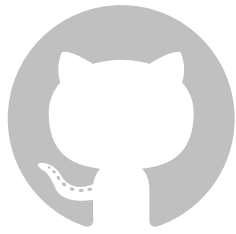
11.1 External links

- [1] *A Perl script for indenting tex files*. URL: <http://tex.blogoverflow.com/2012/08/a-perl-script-for-indenting-tex-files/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [3] *anacoda*. URL: <https://www.anaconda.com/products/individual> (visited on 12/22/2021).
- [6] *conda forge*. URL: <https://github.com/conda-forge/miniforge> (visited on 12/22/2021).
- [7] *CPAN: Comprehensive Perl Archive Network*. URL: <http://www.cpan.org/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [8] *Data Dumper demonstration*. URL: <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/7466825/how-do-you-sort-the-output-of-datadumper> (visited on 06/18/2021).
- [9] *Data::Dumper module*. URL: <https://perldoc.perl.org/Data::Dumper> (visited on 06/18/2021).
- [12] Jeffrey E. F. Friedl. *Mastering Regular Expressions*. ISBN: 0596002890.
- [13] *Home of latexindent.pl*. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [14] *How to create your own auto-completion for JSON and YAML files on VS Code with the help of JSON Schema*. URL: <https://dev.to/brpaz/how-to-create-your-own-auto-completion-for-json-and-yaml-files-on-vs-code-with-the-help-of-json-schema-k1i> (visited on 01/01/2022).
- [15] *How to use latexindent on Windows?* URL: <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/577250/how-to-use-latexindent-on-windows> (visited on 01/08/2022).
- [20] *Log4perl Perl module*. URL: <http://search.cpan.org/~mschilli/Log-Log4perl-1.49/lib/Log/Log4perl.pm> (visited on 09/24/2017).
- [24] *Perlbrew*. URL: <http://perlbrew.pl/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [25] *perldoc Encode::Supported*. URL: <https://perldoc.perl.org/Encode::Supported> (visited on 05/06/2021).
- [28] *Strawberry Perl*. URL: <http://strawberryperl.com/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [29] *Text::Tabs Perl module*. URL: <http://search.cpan.org/~muir/Text-Tabs+Wrap-2013.0523/lib/old/Text/Tabs.pm> (visited on 07/06/2017).
- [30] *Text::Wrap Perl module*. URL: <http://perldoc.perl.org/Text/Wrap.html> (visited on 05/01/2017).
- [31] *Video demonstration of latexindent.pl on youtube*. URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload=10> (visited on 02/21/2017).
- [33] *VSCode YAML extension*. URL: <https://marketplace.visualstudio.com/items?itemName=redhat.vscode-yaml> (visited on 01/01/2022).
- [34] *Windows line breaks on Linux prevent removal of white space from end of line*. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/256> (visited on 06/18/2021).

11.2 Contributors

- [2] Sam Abey. *Print usage tip to STDERR only if STDIN is TTY*. Sept. 17, 2019. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/174> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [4] Paulo Cereda. *arara rule, indent.yaml*. May 23, 2013. URL: <https://github.com/islandoftex/arara/blob/master/rules/arara-rule-indent.yaml> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [5] Cheng Xu (xu cheng). *always output log/help text to STDERR*. July 13, 2018. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/121> (visited on 08/05/2018).
- [10] Jacobo Diaz. *Changed shebang to make the script more portable*. July 23, 2014. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/17> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [11] Jacobo Diaz. *Hiddenconfig*. July 21, 2014. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/18> (visited on 01/23/2017).





- [16] Randolph J. *Alpine-linux instructions*. Aug. 10, 2020. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/214> (visited on 08/10/2020).
- [17] jeanlego. *Search localSettings in CWD as well*. Sept. 15, 2020. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/221> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [18] Jason Juang. *add in PATH installation*. Nov. 24, 2015. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/38> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [19] Harish Kumar. *Early version testing*. Nov. 10, 2013. URL: <https://github.com/harishkumarholla> (visited on 06/30/2017).
- [21] mlep. *One sentence per line*. Aug. 16, 2017. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/81> (visited on 01/08/2018).
- [22] newptcai. *Update appendices.tex*. Feb. 16, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/221> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [23] John Owens. *Paragraph line break routine removal*. May 27, 2017. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/33> (visited on 05/27/2017).
- [26] qiancy98. *Locale encoding of file system*. May 6, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/273> (visited on 05/06/2021).
- [27] Alexander Regueiro. *Update help screen*. Mar. 18, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/261> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [32] Michel Voßkuhle. *Remove trailing white space*. Nov. 10, 2013. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/12> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [35] XuehaiPan. *-y switch upgrade*. Nov. 12, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/297> (visited on 11/12/2021).
- [36] XuehaiPan. *Verbatim block upgrade*. Oct. 3, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/290> (visited on 10/03/2021).
- [37] Tom Zöhner (zoehneto). *Improving text wrap*. Feb. 4, 2018. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/103> (visited on 08/04/2018).

SECTION A



Required Perl modules

If you intend to use `latexindent.pl` and *not* one of the supplied standalone executable files, then you will need a few standard Perl modules – if you can run the minimum code in Listing 546 (`perl helloworld.pl`) then you will be able to run `latexindent.pl`, otherwise you may need to install the missing modules – see appendices A.1 and A.2.

LISTING 546: `helloworld.pl`

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use strict;
use warnings;
use utf8;
use PerlIO::encoding;
use Unicode::GCString;
use open 'std', ':encoding(UTF-8)';
use Text::Wrap;
use Text::Tabs;
use FindBin;
use YAML::Tiny;
use File::Copy;
use File::Basename;
use File::HomeDir;
use Encode;
use Getopt::Long;
use Data::Dumper;
use List::Util qw(max);

print "hello_world";
exit;
```

A.1 Module installer script

`latexindent.pl` ships with a helper script that will install any missing perl modules on your system; if you run

```
cmh:~$ perl latexindent-module-installer.pl
```

or

```
C:\Users\cmh>perl latexindent-module-installer.pl
```

then, once you have answered Y, the appropriate modules will be installed onto your distribution.

A.2 Manually installing modules

Manually installing the modules given in Listing 546 will vary depending on your operating system and Perl distribution.

N: 2018-01-13



A.2.1 Linux

A.2.1.1 perlbrew

Linux users may be interested in exploring Perlbrew [24]; an example installation would be:

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get install perlbrew
cmh:~$ perlbrew init
cmh:~$ perlbrew install perl-5.28.1
cmh:~$ perlbrew switch perl-5.28.1
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get install curl
cmh:~$ curl -L http://cpanmin.us | perl - App::cpanminus
cmh:~$ cpanm YAML::Tiny
cmh:~$ cpanm File::HomeDir
cmh:~$ cpanm Unicode::GCString
```

A.2.1.2 Ubuntu/Debian

For other distributions, the Ubuntu/Debian approach may work as follows

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt install perl
cmh:~$ sudo cpan -i App::cpanminus
cmh:~$ sudo cpanm YAML::Tiny
cmh:~$ sudo cpanm File::HomeDir
cmh:~$ sudo cpanm Unicode::GCString
```

or else by running, for example,

```
cmh:~$ sudo perl -MCPAN -e'install File::HomeDir'
```

A.2.1.3 Ubuntu: using the texlive from apt-get

Ubuntu users that install texlive using apt-get as in the following

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt install texlive
cmh:~$ sudo apt install texlive-latex-recommended
```

may need the following additional command to work with latexindent.pl

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt install texlive-extra-utils
```

A.2.1.4 Alpine

If you are using Alpine, some Perl modules are not build-compatible with Alpine, but replacements are available through apk. For example, you might use the commands given in Listing 547; thanks to [16] for providing these details.



LISTING 547: alpine-install.sh

```
# Installing perl
apk --no-cache add miniperl perl-utils

# Installing incompatible latexindent perl dependencies via apk
apk --no-cache add \
    perl-log-dispatch \
    perl-namespace-autoclean \
    perl-specio \
    perl-unicode-linebreak

# Installing remaining latexindent perl dependencies via cpan
apk --no-cache add curl wget make
ls /usr/share/texmf-dist/scripts/latexindent
cd /usr/local/bin && \
    curl -L https://cpanmin.us/ -o cpanm && \
    chmod +x cpanm
cpanm -n App::cpanminus
cpanm -n File::HomeDir
cpanm -n Params::ValidationCompiler
cpanm -n YAML::Tiny
cpanm -n Unicode::GCString
```

Users of NixOS might like to see <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/222> for tips.

A.2.2 Mac

Users of the Macintosh operating system might like to explore the following commands, for example:

```
cmh:~$ brew install perl
cmh:~$ brew install cpanm
cmh:~$
cmh:~$ cpanm YAML::Tiny
cmh:~$ cpanm File::HomeDir
cmh:~$ cpanm Unicode::GCString
```

A.2.3 Windows

Strawberry Perl users on Windows might use CPAN client. All of the modules are readily available on CPAN [7].

`indent.log` will contain details of the location of the Perl modules on your system. `latexindent.exe` is a standalone executable for Windows (and therefore does not require a Perl distribution) and caches copies of the Perl modules onto your system; if you wish to see where they are cached, use the `trace` option, e.g

```
C:\Users\cmh>latexindent.exe -t myfile.tex
```

SECTION B



Updating the path variable

latexindent.pl has a few scripts (available at [13]) that can update the path variables. Thank you to [18] for this feature. If you're on a Linux or Mac machine, then you'll want CMakeLists.txt from [13].

B.1 Add to path for Linux

To add latexindent.pl to the path for Linux, follow these steps:

1. download latexindent.pl and its associated modules, defaultSettings.yaml, to your chosen directory from [13];
2. within your directory, create a directory called path-helper-files and download CMakeLists.txt and cmake_uninstall.cmake.in from [13]/path-helper-files to this directory;
3. run

```
cmh:~$ ls /usr/local/bin
```

to see what is *currently* in there;

4. run the following commands

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get install cmake
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get update && sudo apt-get install build-essential
cmh:~$ mkdir build && cd build
cmh:~$ cmake ../path-helper-files
cmh:~$ sudo make install
```

5. run

```
cmh:~$ ls /usr/local/bin
```

again to check that latexindent.pl, its modules and defaultSettings.yaml have been added.

To *remove* the files, run

```
cmh:~$ sudo make uninstall
```

B.2 Add to path for Windows

To add latexindent.exe to the path for Windows, follow these steps:

1. download latexindent.exe, defaultSettings.yaml, add-to-path.bat from [13] to your chosen directory;
2. open a command prompt and run the following command to see what is *currently* in your %path% variable;



```
C:\Users\cmh>echo %path%
```

3. right click on add-to-path.bat and *Run as administrator*;
4. log out, and log back in;
5. open a command prompt and run

```
C:\Users\cmh>echo %path%
```

to check that the appropriate directory has been added to your `%path%`.

To *remove* the directory from your `%path%`, run `remove-from-path.bat` as administrator.

SECTION C



latexindent-yaml-schema.json


N: 2022-01-02

`latexindent.pl` ships with `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` which might help you when constructing your YAML files.

C.1 VSCode demonstration


To use `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` with VSCode, you can use the following steps:

1. download `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` from the documentation folder of [13], save it in whichever directory you would like, noting it for reference;
2. following the instructions from [14], for example, you should install the VSCode YAML extension [33];
3. set up your `settings.json` file using the directory you saved the file by adapting Listing 548; on my Ubuntu laptop this file lives at `/home/cmhughes/.config/Code/User/settings.json`.

LISTING 548: `settings.json` 


```
{
  "yaml.schemas": {
    "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/documentation/latexindent-yaml-schema.json":
    "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/defaultSettings.yaml"
  },
  "redhat.telemetry.enabled": true
}
```

Alternatively, if you would prefer not to download the json file, you might be able to use an adapted version of Listing 549.

LISTING 549: `settings-alt.json` 

```
{
  "yaml.schemas": {
    "https://raw.githubusercontent.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/main/documentation/latexindent-yaml-schema.json":
    "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/defaultSettings.yaml"
  }
}
```

Finally, if your TeX distribution is up to date, then `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` *should* be in the documentation folder of your installation, so an adapted version of Listing 550 may work.

LISTING 550: `settings-alt1.json` 

```
{
  "yaml.schemas": {
    "/usr/local/texlive/2021/texmf-dist/doc/support/latexindent/latexindent-yaml-schema.json":
    "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/defaultSettings.yaml"
  }
}
```

If you have details of how to implement this schema in other editors, please feel encouraged to contribute to this documentation.

SECTION D



Using conda

If you use conda you'll only need

```
cmh:~$ conda install latexindent.pl -c conda-forge
```

this will install the executable and all its dependencies (including perl) in the activate environment. You don't even have to worry about `defaultSettings.yaml` as it included too, you can thus skip appendices [A](#) and [B](#).

You can get a conda installation for example from [\[6\]](#) or from [\[3\]](#).

SECTION E



logFilePreferences

Listing 17 on page 21 describes the options for customising the information given to the log file, and we provide a few demonstrations here. Let's say that we start with the code given in Listing 551, and the settings specified in Listing 552.

LISTING 551: simple.tex

```
\begin{myenv}  
  body of myenv  
\end{myenv}
```

LISTING 552: logfile-prefs1.yaml

```
logFilePreferences:  
  showDecorationStartCodeBlockTrace: "+++++"  
  showDecorationFinishCodeBlockTrace: "-----"
```

If we run the following command (noting that `-t` is active)

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -t -l=logfile-prefs1.yaml simple.tex
```

then on inspection of `indent.log` we will find the snippet given in Listing 553.

LISTING 553: indent.log

```
+++++  
TRACE: environment found: myenv  
No ancestors found for myenv  
Storing settings for myenvenvironments  
indentRulesGlobal specified (0) for environments, ...  
Using defaultIndent for myenv  
Putting linebreak after replacementText for myenv  
looking for COMMANDS and key = {value}  
TRACE: Searching for commands with optional and/or mandatory arguments AND key =  
{value}  
looking for SPECIAL begin/end  
TRACE: Searching myenv for special begin/end (see specialBeginEnd)  
TRACE: Searching myenv for optional and mandatory arguments  
... no arguments found  
-----
```

Notice that the information given about `myenv` is 'framed' using `+++++` and `-----` respectively.

SECTION F



Encoding indentconfig.yaml

In relation to Section 4 on page 16, Windows users that encounter encoding issues with `indentconfig.yaml`, may wish to run the following command in either `cmd.exe` or `powershell.exe`:

```
C:\Users\cmh>chcp
```

They may receive the following result

```
C:\Users\cmh>Active code page: 936
```

and can then use the settings given in Listing 554 within their `indentconfig.yaml`, where 936 is the result of the `chcp` command.

LISTING 554: encoding demonstration for `indentconfig.yaml`

```
encoding: cp936
```

SECTION G



dos2unix linebreak adjustment

`dos2unixlinebreaks: <integer>`

N: 2021-06-19

If you use `latexindent.pl` on a dos-based Windows file on Linux then you may find that trailing horizontal space is not removed as you hope.

In such a case, you may wish to try setting `dos2unixlinebreaks` to 1 and employing, for example, the following command.

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -y="dos2unixlinebreaks:1" myfile.tex
```

See [34] for further details.

SECTION H



Differences from Version 2.2 to 3.0

There are a few (small) changes to the interface when comparing Version 2.2 to Version 3.0. Explicitly, in previous versions you might have run, for example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o myfile.tex outputfile.tex
```

whereas in Version 3.0 you would run any of the following, for example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o=outputfile.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o outputfile.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o outputfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=outputfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -outputfile=outputfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -outputfile outputfile.tex
```

noting that the *output* file is given *next* to the `-o` switch.

The fields given in Listing 555 are *obsolete* from Version 3.0 onwards.

LISTING 555: Obsolete YAML fields from Version 3.0

```
alwaysLookforSplitBrackets
alwaysLookforSplitBrackets
checkunmatched
checkunmatchedELSE
checkunmatchedbracket
constructIfElseFi
```

There is a slight difference when specifying indentation after headings; specifically, we now write `indentAfterThisHeading` instead of `indent`. See Listings 556 and 557

LISTING 556:
indentAfterThisHeading in Version
2.2

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  part:
    indent: 0
    level: 1
```

LISTING 557:
indentAfterThisHeading in Version
3.0

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  part:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 0
    level: 1
```

To specify `noAdditionalIndent` for display-math environments in Version 2.2, you would write YAML as in Listing 558; as of Version 3.0, you would write YAML as in Listing 559 or, if you're using `-m` switch, Listing 560.



LISTING 558: noAdditionalIndent in Version 2.2

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  \[: 0
  \]: 0
```

LISTING 559: noAdditionalIndent for displayMath in Version 3.0

```
specialBeginEnd:
  displayMath:
    begin: '\\\[',
    end: '\\\]',
    lookForThis: 0
```

LISTING 560: noAdditionalIndent for displayMath in Version 3.0

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  displayMath: 1
```

End





Listings

LISTING 1: <code>demo-tex.tex</code>	4	LISTING 44: <code>tabular2.yaml</code>	28
LISTING 2: <code>fileExtensionPreference</code>	5	LISTING 45: <code>tabular3.yaml</code>	28
LISTING 3: <code>modifyLineBreaks</code>	5	LISTING 46: <code>tabular4.yaml</code>	28
LISTING 4: <code>replacements</code>	5	LISTING 47: <code>tabular5.yaml</code>	28
LISTING 5: Possible error messages	5	LISTING 48: <code>tabular6.yaml</code>	28
LISTING 6: <code>filecontents1.tex</code>	7	LISTING 49: <code>tabular7.yaml</code>	28
LISTING 7: <code>filecontents1.tex</code> default output	7	LISTING 50: <code>tabular8.yaml</code>	28
LISTING 8: <code>tikzset.tex</code>	7	LISTING 51: <code>tabular2.tex</code> default output	29
LISTING 9: <code>tikzset.tex</code> default output	7	LISTING 52: <code>tabular2.tex</code> using Listing 44	29
LISTING 10: <code>pstricks.tex</code>	7	LISTING 53: <code>tabular2.tex</code> using Listing 45	29
LISTING 11: <code>pstricks.tex</code> default output	7	LISTING 54: <code>tabular2.tex</code> using Listings 44 and 46 ..	29
LISTING 14: The encoding option for <code>indentconfig.yaml</code>	17	LISTING 55: <code>tabular2.tex</code> using Listings 44 and 47 ..	30
LISTING 16: <code>fileExtensionPreference</code>	20	LISTING 56: <code>tabular2.tex</code> using Listings 44 and 48 ..	30
LISTING 17: <code>logFilePreferences</code>	21	LISTING 57: <code>tabular2.tex</code> using Listings 44 and 49 ..	30
LISTING 18: <code>verbatimEnvironments</code>	22	LISTING 58: <code>tabular2.tex</code> using Listings 44 and 50 ..	30
LISTING 19: <code>verbatimCommands</code>	22	LISTING 59: <code>aligned1.tex</code>	31
LISTING 20: <code>nameAsRegex1.yaml</code>	22	LISTING 60: <code>aligned1-default.tex</code>	31
LISTING 21: <code>nameAsRegex2.yaml</code>	22	LISTING 61: <code>sba1.yaml</code>	31
LISTING 22: <code>nameAsRegex3.yaml</code>	23	LISTING 62: <code>sba2.yaml</code>	31
LISTING 23: <code>nameAsRegex4.yaml</code>	23	LISTING 63: <code>sba3.yaml</code>	31
LISTING 24: <code>noIndentBlock</code>	23	LISTING 64: <code>sba4.yaml</code>	31
LISTING 25: <code>noIndentBlock.tex</code>	23	LISTING 65: <code>aligned1-mod1.tex</code>	31
LISTING 26: <code>noIndentBlock1.tex</code>	23	LISTING 66: <code>sba5.yaml</code>	32
LISTING 27: <code>noindent1.yaml</code>	24	LISTING 67: <code>sba6.yaml</code>	32
LISTING 28: <code>noindent2.yaml</code>	24	LISTING 68: <code>aligned1-mod5.tex</code>	32
LISTING 29: <code>noindent3.yaml</code>	24	LISTING 69: <code>aligned1.tex</code> using Listing 70	32
LISTING 30: <code>noIndentBlock1.tex</code> using Listing 27 or Listing 28	24	LISTING 70: <code>sba7.yaml</code>	32
LISTING 31: <code>noIndentBlock1.tex</code> using Listing 29 ..	24	LISTING 71: <code>tabular4.tex</code>	33
LISTING 32: <code>nameAsRegex5.yaml</code>	25	LISTING 72: <code>tabular4-default.tex</code>	33
LISTING 33: <code>nameAsRegex6.yaml</code>	25	LISTING 73: <code>tabular4-FDBS.tex</code>	33
LISTING 34: <code>fileContentsEnvironments</code>	25	LISTING 74: <code>matrix1.tex</code>	33
LISTING 35: <code>lookForPreamble</code>	25	LISTING 75: <code>matrix1.tex</code> default output	33
LISTING 36: Motivating <code>preambleCommandsBeforeEnvironments</code> 26	26	LISTING 76: <code>align-block.tex</code>	33
LISTING 37: <code>removeTrailingWhitespace</code>	26	LISTING 77: <code>align-block.tex</code> default output	33
LISTING 40: <code>tabular1.tex</code>	27	LISTING 78: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code>	33
LISTING 41: <code>tabular1.tex</code> default output	27	LISTING 79: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> default output	33
LISTING 42: <code>lookForAlignDelims</code> (advanced)	27	LISTING 80: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> using Listing 81	34
LISTING 43: <code>tabular2.tex</code>	28	LISTING 81: <code>dontMeasure1.yaml</code>	34
		LISTING 82: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> using Listing 83 or List- ing 85	34
		LISTING 83: <code>dontMeasure2.yaml</code>	34



LISTING 84: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 85 or Listing 85	34	LISTING 131: special-align.tex using Listing 130 ..	42
LISTING 85: dontMeasure3.yaml	34	LISTING 132: indentAfterHeadings	42
LISTING 86: dontMeasure4.yaml	34	LISTING 133: headings1.yaml	43
LISTING 87: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 88	35	LISTING 134: headings1.tex	43
LISTING 88: dontMeasure5.yaml	35	LISTING 135: headings1.tex using Listing 133	43
LISTING 89: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 90	35	LISTING 136: headings1.tex second modification	43
LISTING 90: dontMeasure6.yaml	35	LISTING 137: mult-nested.tex	44
LISTING 91: tabbing.tex	35	LISTING 138: mult-nested.tex default output	44
LISTING 92: tabbing.tex default output	35	LISTING 139: max-indentation1.yaml	44
LISTING 93: tabbing.tex using Listing 94	36	LISTING 140: mult-nested.tex using Listing 139	44
LISTING 94: delimiterRegEx1.yaml	36	LISTING 141: myenv.tex	46
LISTING 95: tabbing.tex using Listing 96	36	LISTING 142: myenv-noAdd1.yaml	46
LISTING 96: delimiterRegEx2.yaml	36	LISTING 143: myenv-noAdd2.yaml	46
LISTING 97: tabbing.tex using Listing 98	36	LISTING 144: myenv.tex output (using either Listing 142 or Listing 143)	47
LISTING 98: delimiterRegEx3.yaml	36	LISTING 145: myenv-noAdd3.yaml	47
LISTING 99: tabbing1.tex	37	LISTING 146: myenv-noAdd4.yaml	47
LISTING 100: tabbing1-mod4.tex	37	LISTING 147: myenv.tex output (using either Listing 145 or Listing 146)	47
LISTING 101: delimiterRegEx4.yaml	37	LISTING 148: myenv-args.tex	47
LISTING 102: tabbing1-mod5.tex	37	LISTING 149: myenv-args.tex using Listing 142	48
LISTING 103: delimiterRegEx5.yaml	37	LISTING 150: myenv-noAdd5.yaml	48
LISTING 104: tabular-DM-1.tex	37	LISTING 151: myenv-noAdd6.yaml	48
LISTING 105: tabular-DM-1-mod1.tex	37	LISTING 152: myenv-args.tex using Listing 150	48
LISTING 106: tabular-DM-1-mod1a.tex	37	LISTING 153: myenv-args.tex using Listing 151	48
LISTING 107: dontMeasure1a.yaml	37	LISTING 154: myenv-rules1.yaml	48
LISTING 108: indentAfterItems	38	LISTING 155: myenv-rules2.yaml	48
LISTING 109: items1.tex	38	LISTING 156: myenv.tex output (using either Listing 154 or Listing 155)	49
LISTING 110: items1.tex default output	38	LISTING 157: myenv-args.tex using Listing 154	49
LISTING 111: itemNames	38	LISTING 158: myenv-rules3.yaml	49
LISTING 112: specialBeginEnd	38	LISTING 159: myenv-rules4.yaml	49
LISTING 113: special1.tex before	39	LISTING 160: myenv-args.tex using Listing 158	50
LISTING 114: special1.tex default output	39	LISTING 161: myenv-args.tex using Listing 159	50
LISTING 115: specialLR.tex	39	LISTING 162: noAdditionalIndentGlobal	50
LISTING 116: specialsLeftRight.yaml	39	LISTING 163: myenv-args.tex using Listing 162	50
LISTING 117: specialBeforeCommand.yaml	39	LISTING 164: myenv-args.tex using Listings 154 and 162	50
LISTING 118: specialLR.tex using Listing 116	39	LISTING 165: opt-args-no-add-glob.yaml	51
LISTING 119: specialLR.tex using Listings 116 and 117	39	LISTING 166: mand-args-no-add-glob.yaml	51
LISTING 120: special2.tex	40	LISTING 167: myenv-args.tex using Listing 165	51
LISTING 121: middle.yaml	40	LISTING 168: myenv-args.tex using Listing 166	51
LISTING 122: special2.tex using Listing 121	40	LISTING 169: indentRulesGlobal	51
LISTING 123: middle1.yaml	40	LISTING 170: myenv-args.tex using Listing 169	52
LISTING 124: special2.tex using Listing 123	40	LISTING 171: myenv-args.tex using Listings 154 and 169	52
LISTING 125: special-verb1.yaml	41	LISTING 172: opt-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml ..	52
LISTING 126: special3.tex and output using Listing 125	41	LISTING 173: mand-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml	52
LISTING 127: special-align.tex	41		
LISTING 128: edge-node1.yaml	41		
LISTING 129: special-align.tex using Listing 128 ..	41		
LISTING 130: edge-node2.yaml	42		



LISTING 176: <code>item-noAdd1.yaml</code>	52	LISTING 224: <code>headings6.yaml</code>	59
LISTING 177: <code>item-rules1.yaml</code>	52	LISTING 225: <code>headings2.tex</code> using Listing 226	59
LISTING 178: <code>items1.tex</code> using Listing 176	53	LISTING 226: <code>headings7.yaml</code>	59
LISTING 179: <code>items1.tex</code> using Listing 177	53	LISTING 227: <code>headings2.tex</code> using Listing 228	59
LISTING 180: <code>items-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml</code>	53	LISTING 228: <code>headings8.yaml</code>	59
LISTING 181: <code>items-indentRulesGlobal.yaml</code>	53	LISTING 229: <code>headings2.tex</code> using Listing 230	59
LISTING 182: <code>mycommand.tex</code>	53	LISTING 230: <code>headings9.yaml</code>	59
LISTING 183: <code>mycommand.tex</code> default output	53	LISTING 231: <code>pgfkeys1.tex</code>	60
LISTING 184: <code>mycommand-noAdd1.yaml</code>	54	LISTING 232: <code>pgfkeys1.tex</code> default output	60
LISTING 185: <code>mycommand-noAdd2.yaml</code>	54	LISTING 233: <code>child1.tex</code>	60
LISTING 186: <code>mycommand.tex</code> using Listing 184	54	LISTING 234: <code>child1.tex</code> default output	60
LISTING 187: <code>mycommand.tex</code> using Listing 185	54	LISTING 235: <code>psforeach1.tex</code>	61
LISTING 188: <code>mycommand-noAdd3.yaml</code>	54	LISTING 236: <code>psforeach1.tex</code> default output	61
LISTING 189: <code>mycommand-noAdd4.yaml</code>	54	LISTING 237: <code>noAdditionalIndentGlobal</code>	61
LISTING 190: <code>mycommand.tex</code> using Listing 188	54	LISTING 238: <code>indentRulesGlobal</code>	61
LISTING 191: <code>mycommand.tex</code> using Listing 189	54	LISTING 239: <code>commandCodeBlocks</code>	62
LISTING 192: <code>mycommand-noAdd5.yaml</code>	55	LISTING 240: <code>pstricks1.tex</code>	62
LISTING 193: <code>mycommand-noAdd6.yaml</code>	55	LISTING 241: <code>pstricks1</code> default output	62
LISTING 194: <code>mycommand.tex</code> using Listing 192	55	LISTING 242: <code>pstricks1.tex</code> using Listing 243	62
LISTING 195: <code>mycommand.tex</code> using Listing 193	55	LISTING 243: <code>noRoundParentheses.yaml</code>	62
LISTING 196: <code>ifelsefi1.tex</code>	55	LISTING 244: <code>pstricks1.tex</code> using Listing 245	63
LISTING 197: <code>ifelsefi1.tex</code> default output	55	LISTING 245: <code>defFunction.yaml</code>	63
LISTING 198: <code>ifnum-noAdd.yaml</code>	55	LISTING 246: <code>tikz-node1.tex</code>	63
LISTING 199: <code>ifnum-indent-rules.yaml</code>	55	LISTING 247: <code>tikz-node1</code> default output	63
LISTING 200: <code>ifelsefi1.tex</code> using Listing 198	56	LISTING 248: <code>tikz-node1.tex</code> using Listing 249	64
LISTING 201: <code>ifelsefi1.tex</code> using Listing 199	56	LISTING 249: <code>draw.yaml</code>	64
LISTING 202: <code>ifelsefi-noAdd-glob.yaml</code>	56	LISTING 250: <code>tikz-node1.tex</code> using Listing 251	64
LISTING 203: <code>ifelsefi-indent-rules-global.yaml</code> 56		LISTING 251: <code>no-strings.yaml</code>	64
LISTING 204: <code>ifelsefi1.tex</code> using Listing 202	56	LISTING 252: <code>amalgamate-demo.yaml</code>	64
LISTING 205: <code>ifelsefi1.tex</code> using Listing 203	56	LISTING 253: <code>amalgamate-demo1.yaml</code>	64
LISTING 206: <code>ifelsefi2.tex</code>	56	LISTING 254: <code>amalgamate-demo2.yaml</code>	64
LISTING 207: <code>ifelsefi2.tex</code> default output	56	LISTING 255: <code>amalgamate-demo3.yaml</code>	65
LISTING 208: <code>displayMath-noAdd.yaml</code>	57	LISTING 256: <code>for-each.tex</code>	65
LISTING 209: <code>displayMath-indent-rules.yaml</code>	57	LISTING 257: <code>for-each</code> default output	65
LISTING 210: <code>special1.tex</code> using Listing 208	57	LISTING 258: <code>for-each.tex</code> using Listing 259	65
LISTING 211: <code>special1.tex</code> using Listing 209	57	LISTING 259: <code>foreach.yaml</code>	65
LISTING 212: <code>special-noAdd-glob.yaml</code>	57	LISTING 260: <code>ifnextchar.tex</code>	65
LISTING 213: <code>special-indent-rules-global.yaml</code> 57		LISTING 261: <code>ifnextchar.tex</code> default output	65
LISTING 214: <code>special1.tex</code> using Listing 212	57	LISTING 262: <code>ifnextchar.tex</code> using Listing 263	66
LISTING 215: <code>special1.tex</code> using Listing 213	57	LISTING 263: <code>no-ifnextchar.yaml</code>	66
LISTING 216: <code>headings2.tex</code>	58	LISTING 264: <code>modifyLineBreaks</code>	68
LISTING 217: <code>headings2.tex</code> using Listing 218	58	LISTING 265: <code>mlb1.tex</code>	68
LISTING 218: <code>headings3.yaml</code>	58	LISTING 266: <code>mlb1-mod1.tex</code>	68
LISTING 219: <code>headings2.tex</code> using Listing 220	58	LISTING 267: <code>textwrap-qs.yaml</code>	69
LISTING 220: <code>headings4.yaml</code>	58	LISTING 268: <code>textWrapOptions</code>	69
LISTING 221: <code>headings2.tex</code> using Listing 222	58	LISTING 269: <code>textwrap1.tex</code>	69
LISTING 222: <code>headings5.yaml</code>	58	LISTING 270: <code>textwrap1-mod1.tex</code>	70
LISTING 223: <code>headings2.tex</code> using Listing 224	59	LISTING 271: <code>textwrap1.yaml</code>	70
		LISTING 272: <code>textwrap2.tex</code>	70



LISTING 273: <code>textwrap2-mod1.tex</code>	70	LISTING 322: <code>stop-comment.yaml</code>	82
LISTING 274: <code>textwrap3.tex</code>	70	LISTING 323: <code>sl-stop4.tex</code>	83
LISTING 275: <code>textwrap3-mod1.tex</code>	71	LISTING 324: <code>sl-stop4-command.tex</code>	83
LISTING 276: <code>textwrap4-mod2A.tex</code>	71	LISTING 325: <code>sl-stop4-comment.tex</code>	83
LISTING 277: <code>textwrap2A.yaml</code>	71	LISTING 326: <code>textwrap7.tex</code>	83
LISTING 278: <code>textwrap4-mod2B.tex</code>	71	LISTING 327: <code>textwrap7.tex</code> using Listing 285.....	84
LISTING 279: <code>textwrap2B.yaml</code>	71	LISTING 328: <code>textwrap7-mod12.tex</code>	84
LISTING 280: <code>textwrap-ts.tex</code>	72	LISTING 329: <code>textwrap12.yaml</code>	84
LISTING 281: <code>tabstop.yaml</code>	72	LISTING 330: <code>textwrap-bfccb.tex</code>	84
LISTING 282: <code>textwrap-ts-mod1.tex</code>	72	LISTING 331: <code>textwrap-bfccb-mod12.tex</code>	85
LISTING 283: <code>textWrapOptions</code>	72	LISTING 332: <code>textwrap13.yaml</code> (tweaked quick start).....	85
LISTING 284: <code>textwrap5.tex</code>	73	LISTING 333: <code>textwrap-bfccb-mod13.tex</code>	85
LISTING 285: <code>textwrap3.yaml</code>	73	LISTING 334: <code>textwrap-bfccb-mod14.tex</code>	86
LISTING 286: <code>textwrap4.yaml</code>	73	LISTING 335: <code>textwrap14.yaml</code>	86
LISTING 287: <code>textwrap5.yaml</code>	73	LISTING 336: <code>textwrap15.yaml</code>	86
LISTING 288: <code>textwrap5-mod3.tex</code>	73	LISTING 337: <code>oneSentencePerLine</code>	87
LISTING 289: <code>textwrap6.tex</code>	74	LISTING 338: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code>	87
LISTING 290: <code>textwrap6.tex</code> using Listing 287.....	74	LISTING 339: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 340.....	88
LISTING 291: <code>textwrap6.yaml</code>	74	LISTING 340: <code>manipulate-sentences.yaml</code>	88
LISTING 292: <code>textwrap7.yaml</code>	74	LISTING 341: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 342.....	88
LISTING 293: <code>textwrap8.yaml</code>	74	LISTING 342: <code>keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml</code>	88
LISTING 294: <code>textwrap6.tex</code> using Listing 291.....	75	LISTING 343: <code>sentencesFollow</code>	88
LISTING 295: <code>textwrap6.tex</code> using Listing 292.....	75	LISTING 344: <code>sentencesBeginWith</code>	88
LISTING 296: <code>textwrap6.tex</code> using Listing 293.....	75	LISTING 345: <code>sentencesEndWith</code>	88
LISTING 297: <code>textwrap9.yaml</code>	76	LISTING 346: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 347.....	89
LISTING 298: <code>textwrap10.yaml</code>	76	LISTING 347: <code>sentences-follow1.yaml</code>	89
LISTING 299: <code>textwrap11.yaml</code>	76	LISTING 348: <code>multiple-sentences1.tex</code>	89
LISTING 300: <code>textwrap6.tex</code> using Listing 297.....	76	LISTING 349: <code>multiple-sentences1.tex</code> using Listing 340 on page 88.....	89
LISTING 301: <code>textwrap6.tex</code> using Listing 299.....	77	LISTING 350: <code>multiple-sentences1.tex</code> using Listing 351.....	89
LISTING 302: <code>removeParagraphLineBreaks</code>	78	LISTING 351: <code>sentences-follow2.yaml</code>	89
LISTING 303: <code>shortlines.tex</code>	78	LISTING 352: <code>multiple-sentences2.tex</code>	90
LISTING 304: <code>remove-para1.yaml</code>	78	LISTING 353: <code>multiple-sentences2.tex</code> using Listing 340 on page 88.....	90
LISTING 305: <code>shortlines1.tex</code>	78	LISTING 354: <code>multiple-sentences2.tex</code> using Listing 355.....	90
LISTING 306: <code>shortlines1-tws.tex</code>	79	LISTING 355: <code>sentences-begin1.yaml</code>	90
LISTING 307: <code>shortlines-mand.tex</code>	79	LISTING 356: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 357.....	90
LISTING 308: <code>shortlines-opt.tex</code>	79	LISTING 357: <code>sentences-end1.yaml</code>	90
LISTING 309: <code>shortlines-mand1.tex</code>	79	LISTING 358: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 359.....	91
LISTING 310: <code>shortlines-opt1.tex</code>	79	LISTING 359: <code>sentences-end2.yaml</code>	91
LISTING 311: <code>shortlines-envs.tex</code>	80	LISTING 360: <code>url.tex</code>	91
LISTING 312: <code>remove-para2.yaml</code>	80	LISTING 361: <code>url.tex</code> using Listing 340 on page 88... ..	91
LISTING 313: <code>remove-para3.yaml</code>	80	LISTING 362: <code>url.tex</code> using Listing 363.....	92
LISTING 314: <code>shortlines-envs2.tex</code>	80	LISTING 363: <code>alt-full-stop1.yaml</code>	92
LISTING 315: <code>shortlines-envs3.tex</code>	81		
LISTING 316: <code>shortlines-md.tex</code>	81		
LISTING 317: <code>remove-para4.yaml</code>	81		
LISTING 318: <code>shortlines-md4.tex</code>	82		
LISTING 319: <code>paragraphsStopAt</code>	82		
LISTING 320: <code>sl-stop.tex</code>	82		
LISTING 321: <code>stop-command.yaml</code>	82		



LISTING 364: <code>multiple-sentences3.tex</code>	92	LISTING 407: <code>env-mlb12.yaml</code>	98
LISTING 365: <code>multiple-sentences3.tex</code> using Listing 340 on page 88	92	LISTING 408: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 406	99
LISTING 366: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code>	93	LISTING 409: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 407	99
LISTING 367: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code> using Listing 340 on page 88	93	LISTING 410: <code>env-end4.yaml</code>	99
LISTING 368: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code> using Listing 342 on page 88	93	LISTING 411: <code>env-end-f4.yaml</code>	99
LISTING 369: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code> using Listing 370	93	LISTING 412: <code>env-mlb1.tex</code> using Listing 410	99
LISTING 370: <code>item-rules2.yaml</code>	93	LISTING 413: <code>env-mlb1.tex</code> using Listing 411	99
LISTING 371: <code>multiple-sentences5.tex</code>	93	LISTING 414: <code>env-mlb2.tex</code>	99
LISTING 372: <code>multiple-sentences5.tex</code> using Listing 373	94	LISTING 415: <code>env-mlb3.tex</code>	99
LISTING 373: <code>sentence-wrap1.yaml</code>	94	LISTING 416: <code>env-mlb3.tex</code> using Listing 382 on page 96	100
LISTING 374: <code>multiple-sentences6.tex</code>	94	LISTING 417: <code>env-mlb3.tex</code> using Listing 386 on page 96	100
LISTING 375: <code>multiple-sentences6-mod1.tex</code> using Listing 373	94	LISTING 418: <code>env-mlb4.tex</code>	100
LISTING 376: <code>multiple-sentences6-mod2.tex</code> using Listing 373 and no sentence indentation	94	LISTING 419: <code>env-mlb13.yaml</code>	100
LISTING 377: <code>itemize.yaml</code>	95	LISTING 420: <code>env-mlb14.yaml</code>	100
LISTING 378: <code>multiple-sentences6-mod3.tex</code> using Listing 373 and Listing 377	95	LISTING 421: <code>env-mlb15.yaml</code>	100
LISTING 379: <code>environments</code>	96	LISTING 422: <code>env-mlb16.yaml</code>	100
LISTING 380: <code>env-mlb1.tex</code>	96	LISTING 423: <code>env-mlb4.tex</code> using Listing 419	101
LISTING 381: <code>env-mlb1.yaml</code>	96	LISTING 424: <code>env-mlb4.tex</code> using Listing 420	101
LISTING 382: <code>env-mlb2.yaml</code>	96	LISTING 425: <code>env-mlb4.tex</code> using Listing 421	101
LISTING 383: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 381	96	LISTING 426: <code>env-mlb4.tex</code> using Listing 422	101
LISTING 384: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 382	96	LISTING 427: <code>env-mlb5.tex</code>	101
LISTING 385: <code>env-mlb3.yaml</code>	96	LISTING 428: <code>removeTWS-before.yaml</code>	101
LISTING 386: <code>env-mlb4.yaml</code>	96	LISTING 429: <code>env-mlb5.tex</code> using Listings 423 to 426	101
LISTING 387: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 385	96	LISTING 430: <code>env-mlb5.tex</code> using Listings 423 to 426 and Listing 428	102
LISTING 388: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 386	96	LISTING 431: <code>env-mlb6.tex</code>	102
LISTING 389: <code>env-mlb5.yaml</code>	97	LISTING 432: <code>UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml</code>	102
LISTING 390: <code>env-mlb6.yaml</code>	97	LISTING 433: <code>env-mlb6.tex</code> using Listings 423 to 426	102
LISTING 391: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 389	97	LISTING 434: <code>env-mlb6.tex</code> using Listings 423 to 426 and Listing 432	102
LISTING 392: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 390	97	LISTING 435: <code>env-mlb7.tex</code>	102
LISTING 393: <code>env-beg4.yaml</code>	97	LISTING 436: <code>env-mlb7-preserve.tex</code>	103
LISTING 394: <code>env-body4.yaml</code>	97	LISTING 437: <code>env-mlb7-no-preserve.tex</code>	103
LISTING 395: <code>env-mlb1.tex</code>	97	LISTING 438: <code>tabular3.tex</code>	103
LISTING 396: <code>env-mlb1.tex</code> using Listing 393	97	LISTING 439: <code>tabular3.tex</code> using Listing 440	103
LISTING 397: <code>env-mlb1.tex</code> using Listing 394	97	LISTING 440: <code>DBS1.yaml</code>	103
LISTING 398: <code>env-mlb7.yaml</code>	98	LISTING 441: <code>tabular3.tex</code> using Listing 442	104
LISTING 399: <code>env-mlb8.yaml</code>	98	LISTING 442: <code>DBS2.yaml</code>	104
LISTING 400: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 398	98	LISTING 443: <code>tabular3.tex</code> using Listing 444	104
LISTING 401: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 399	98	LISTING 444: <code>DBS3.yaml</code>	104
LISTING 402: <code>env-mlb9.yaml</code>	98	LISTING 445: <code>tabular3.tex</code> using Listing 446	104
LISTING 403: <code>env-mlb10.yaml</code>	98	LISTING 446: <code>DBS4.yaml</code>	104
LISTING 404: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 402	98	LISTING 447: <code>special4.tex</code>	105
LISTING 405: <code>env-mlb.tex</code> using Listing 403	98	LISTING 448: <code>special4.tex</code> using Listing 449	105
LISTING 406: <code>env-mlb11.yaml</code>	98	LISTING 449: <code>DBS5.yaml</code>	105
		LISTING 450: <code>mycommand2.tex</code>	105
		LISTING 451: <code>mycommand2.tex</code> using Listing 452	105
		LISTING 452: <code>DBS6.yaml</code>	105



LISTING 453: mycommand2.tex using Listing 454	106
LISTING 454: DBS7.yaml	106
LISTING 455: pmatrix3.tex	106
LISTING 456: pmatrix3.tex using Listing 444	106
LISTING 457: mycommand1.tex	108
LISTING 458: mycommand1.tex using Listing 459	108
LISTING 459: mycom-mlb1.yaml	108
LISTING 460: mycommand1.tex using Listing 461	108
LISTING 461: mycom-mlb2.yaml	108
LISTING 462: mycommand1.tex using Listing 463	109
LISTING 463: mycom-mlb3.yaml	109
LISTING 464: mycommand1.tex using Listing 465	109
LISTING 465: mycom-mlb4.yaml	109
LISTING 466: mycommand1.tex using Listing 467	109
LISTING 467: mycom-mlb5.yaml	109
LISTING 468: mycommand1.tex using Listing 469	110
LISTING 469: mycom-mlb6.yaml	110
LISTING 470: nested-env.tex	110
LISTING 471: nested-env.tex using Listing 472	110
LISTING 472: nested-env-mlb1.yaml	110
LISTING 473: nested-env.tex using Listing 474	111
LISTING 474: nested-env-mlb2.yaml	111
LISTING 475: replacements	112
LISTING 476: replace1.tex	113
LISTING 477: replace1.tex default	113
LISTING 478: replace1.tex using Listing 479	113
LISTING 479: replace1.yaml	113
LISTING 480: colsep.tex	113
LISTING 481: colsep.tex using Listing 480	114
LISTING 482: colsep.yaml	114
LISTING 483: colsep.tex using Listing 484	114
LISTING 484: colsep1.yaml	114
LISTING 485: colsep.tex using Listing 486	115
LISTING 486: multi-line.yaml	115
LISTING 487: colsep.tex using Listing 488	115
LISTING 488: multi-line1.yaml	115
LISTING 489: displaymath.tex	116
LISTING 490: displaymath.tex using Listing 491	116
LISTING 491: displaymath1.yaml	116
LISTING 492: displaymath.tex using Listings 491 and 493	117
LISTING 493: equation.yaml	117
LISTING 494: phrase.tex	117
LISTING 495: phrase.tex using Listing 496	117
LISTING 496: hspace.yaml	117
LISTING 497: references.tex	118
LISTING 498: references.tex using Listing 499	118
LISTING 499: reference.yaml	118
LISTING 500: verb1.tex	118
LISTING 501: verbatim1.yaml	118
LISTING 502: verb1-mod1.tex	119
LISTING 503: verb1-rv-mod1.tex	119
LISTING 504: verb1-rr-mod1.tex	119
LISTING 505: amal1.tex	119
LISTING 506: amal1-yaml.yaml	119
LISTING 507: amal2-yaml.yaml	119
LISTING 508: amal3-yaml.yaml	119
LISTING 509: amal1.tex using Listing 506	120
LISTING 510: amal1.tex using Listings 506 and 507	120
LISTING 511: amal1.tex using Listings 506 to 508	120
LISTING 512: myfile.tex	121
LISTING 513: myfile-mod1.tex	122
LISTING 514: myfile-mod2.tex	122
LISTING 515: myfile-mod3.tex	123
LISTING 516: myfile-mod4.tex	124
LISTING 517: myfile-mod5.tex	124
LISTING 518: myfile-mod6.tex	125
LISTING 519: myfile1.tex	125
LISTING 520: myfile1-mod1.tex	126
✱✱LISTING 521: fineTuning	127
LISTING 522: finetuning1.tex	129
LISTING 523: finetuning1.tex default	129
LISTING 524: finetuning1.tex using Listing 525	129
LISTING 525: finetuning1.yaml	129
LISTING 526: finetuning2.tex	129
LISTING 527: finetuning2.tex default	129
LISTING 528: finetuning2.tex using Listing 529	130
LISTING 529: finetuning2.yaml	130
LISTING 530: finetuning3.tex	130
LISTING 531: finetuning3.tex using -y switch	130
LISTING 532: finetuning4.tex	130
LISTING 533: href1.yaml	130
LISTING 534: href2.yaml	130
LISTING 535: finetuning4.tex using Listing 533	131
LISTING 536: finetuning4.tex using Listing 534	131
LISTING 537: href3.yaml	131
LISTING 538: bib1.bib	132
LISTING 539: bib1-mod1.bib	132
LISTING 540: bib1.bib using Listing 541	132
LISTING 541: bibsettings1.yaml	132
LISTING 542: bib2.bib	133
LISTING 543: bib2-mod1.bib	133
LISTING 544: bibsettings2.yaml	133
LISTING 545: bib2-mod2.bib	133
LISTING 546: helloworld.pl	137
LISTING 547: alpine-install.sh	139
✱✱LISTING 548: settings.json	142
✱✱LISTING 549: settings-alt.json	142
✱✱LISTING 550: settings-alt1.json	142



LISTING 551: <code>simple.tex</code>	144
LISTING 552: <code>logfile-prefs1.yaml</code>	144
LISTING 553: <code>indent.log</code>	144
LISTING 554: encoding demonstration for <code>indentconfig.yaml</code>	145
LISTING 555: Obsolete YAML fields from Version 3.0 ..	147
LISTING 556: <code>indentAfterThisHeading</code> in Version 2.2	147

LISTING 557: <code>indentAfterThisHeading</code> in Version 3.0	147
LISTING 558: <code>noAdditionalIndent</code> in Version 2.2	148
LISTING 559: <code>noAdditionalIndent</code> for <code>displayMath</code> in Version 3.0	148
LISTING 560: <code>noAdditionalIndent</code> for <code>displayMath</code> in Version 3.0	148



Index

— B —

backup files
 cycle through, 21
 extension settings, 20
 maximum number of backup files, 21
 number of backup files, 21
 overwrite switch, -w, 9
bibliography files, 131

— C —

capturing parenthesis (regex), 35
conda, 143

— D —

delimiters, 104
 advanced settings, 27
 advanced settings of lookForAlignDelims, 26
 ampersand &, 27
 default settings of lookForAlignDelims, 27
 delimiter justification (left or right), 35
 delimiterRegEx, 35, 131
 dontMeasure feature, 33
 double backslash demonstration, 32
 lookForAlignDelims, 27
 poly-switches for double back slash, 103
 spacing demonstration, 28
 with specialBeginEnd and the -m switch, 105
 within specialBeginEnd blocks, 41

— E —

exit code, 14
 summary, 14

— I —

indentation
 customising indentation per-code block, 44
 customising per-name, 44
 default, 11
 defaultIndent description, 26
 defaultIndent using -y switch, 11
 defaultIndent using YAML file, 16
 maximum indentation, 44
 no additional indent, 44
 no additional indent global, 44
 removing indentation per-code block, 44
 summary, 61

— J —

json
 schema for YAML files, 142
 VSCode, 142

— L —

latexindent.exe, 8
linebreaks
 summary of poly-switches, 104

— M —

MiKTeX, 8
modifying linebreaks
 at the *beginning* of a code block, 96
 at the *end* of a code block, 98
 by text wrapping, globally, 69
 by text wrapping, per-code-block, 72
 by using one sentence per line, 87
 surrounding double back slash, 103
 using poly-switches, 95

— P —

poly-switches
 adding blank lines (again!): set to 4, 97, 99
 adding blank lines: set to 3, 97, 98
 adding comments and then line breaks: set to 2, 96, 98
 adding line breaks: set to 1, 96, 98
 blank lines, 102
 conflicting partnering, 108
 conflicting switches, 109, 110
 default values, 95
 definition, 95
 double backslash, 104
 environment global example, 95
 environment per-code block example, 95
 for double back slash (delimiters), 103–106
 off by default: set to 0, 95
 removing line breaks: set to -1, 100
 summary of all poly-switches, 106
 values, 95
 visualisation: ♠, ♥, ♦, ♣, 96

— R —

regular expressions
 a word about, 6
 ampersand alignment, 27, 131
 arguments, 127
 at least one +, 41, 114, 117, 127–129
 capturing parenthesis, 35, 131
 character class demonstration, 131
 commands, 127
 delimiter alignment for edge or node, 41
 delimiter regex at #, 37
 delimiter regex at # or \>, 37
 delimiter regex at \= or \>, 36



- delimiter regex at only `\>`, 36
 - delimiterRegex, 27, 131
 - dontMeasure feature, cell, 34
 - dontMeasure feature, row, 35
 - environments, 127
 - fine tuning, 127
 - horizontal space `\h`, 41, 44, 94, 117, 118, 127
 - ifElseFi, 127
 - keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets, 127
 - lowercase alph a-z, 34, 35, 44, 87, 88, 90, 94, 127
 - modifyLineBreaks, 127
 - NamedGroupingBracesBrackets, 127
 - numeric 0-9, 41, 44, 90, 94, 127
 - replacement switch, -r, 113
 - substitution field, arraycolsep, 114
 - substitution field, equation, 116
 - UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets, 127
 - uppercase alph A-Z, 41, 44, 87, 88, 94, 127
 - using -y switch, 18
- S —
- sentences
 - begin with, 88, 89
 - end with, 88, 90
 - follow, 88, 89
 - indenting, 93
 - one sentence per line, 87
 - oneSentencePerLine, 87
 - removing sentence line breaks, 87
 - text wrapping, 93
 - specialBeginEnd
 - alignment at delimiter, 41
 - combined with lookForAlignDelims, 41
 - default settings, 38
 - delimiterRegex, 41
 - delimiterRegex tweaked, 41
 - double backslash poly-switch demonstration, 104
 - IfElsFi example, 39
 - indentRules example, 57
 - indentRulesGlobal, 61
 - introduction, 38
 - lookForAlignDelims, 104
 - middle, 39
 - noAdditionalIndent, 57
 - noAdditionalIndentGlobal, 61
 - paragraphsStopAt, 82
 - poly-switch summary, 106
 - removeParagraphLineBreaks, 77
 - searching for special before commands, 39
 - specifying as verbatim, 41
 - textWrapOptions, 72
 - tikz example, 41
 - update to displaymath V3.0, 147
 - switches
 - c, -cruft definition and details, 12
 - d, -onlydefault definition and details, 12
 - g, -logfile definition and details, 12
 - h, -help definition and details, 8
 - k, -check definition and details, 14
 - kv, -checkkv definition and details, 14
 - l demonstration, 17, 18, 28, 34–37, 39–41, 43, 44, 46–58, 62–65, 69–71, 73, 74, 76, 78–82, 84, 87, 89–106, 108–111, 113–119, 129
 - l in relation to other settings, 18
 - l, -local definition and details, 10
 - lines demonstration, 121
 - lines demonstration, negation, 124, 125
 - m demonstration, 68–71, 73, 74, 76, 78–82, 84, 87, 89–106, 108–111, 116
 - m, -modifylinebreaks definition and details, 13
 - n, -lines definition and details, 14
 - o demonstration, 32, 36, 37, 41, 69–71, 78–82, 84, 118, 147
 - o, -output definition and details, 9
 - r demonstration, 112–119
 - r, -replacement definition and details, 13
 - rr demonstration, 115, 118
 - rr, -onlyreplacement definition and details, 14
 - rv demonstration, 118
 - rv, -replacementrespectverb definition and details, 13
 - s, -silent definition and details, 10
 - sl, -screenlog definition and details, 12
 - t, -trace definition and details, 10
 - tt, -ttrace definition and details, 10
 - v, -version definition and details, 8
 - vv, -vversion definition and details, 8
 - w, -overwrite definition and details, 9
 - y demonstration, 18, 32, 94
 - y, -yaml definition and details, 11
- T —
- TeXLive, 8
 - text wrap
 - quick start, 69
 - recommended starting point, 84
- V —
- verbatim
 - commands, 22
 - comparison with -r and -rr switches, 118
 - environments, 22
 - in relation to oneSentencePerLine, 92
 - in relation to paragraphsStopAt, 82
 - in relation to textWrapOptions, 70
 - noIndentBlock, 23
 - poly-switch summary, 106
 - rv, replacementrespectverb switch, 13, 112
 - specialBeginEnd, 40
 - verbatimEnvironments demonstration (-l switch), 18
 - verbatimEnvironments demonstration (-y switch), 18
 - within summary of text wrapping, 86
 - VSCode, 142
- W —
- warning
 - amalgamate field, 66
 - be sure to test before use, 4



capture groups, [128](#)
capturing parenthesis for lookForAlignDelims,
 [35](#)
changing huge (textwrap), [71](#)
editing YAML files, [17](#)
fine tuning, [127](#)
the m switch, [68](#)